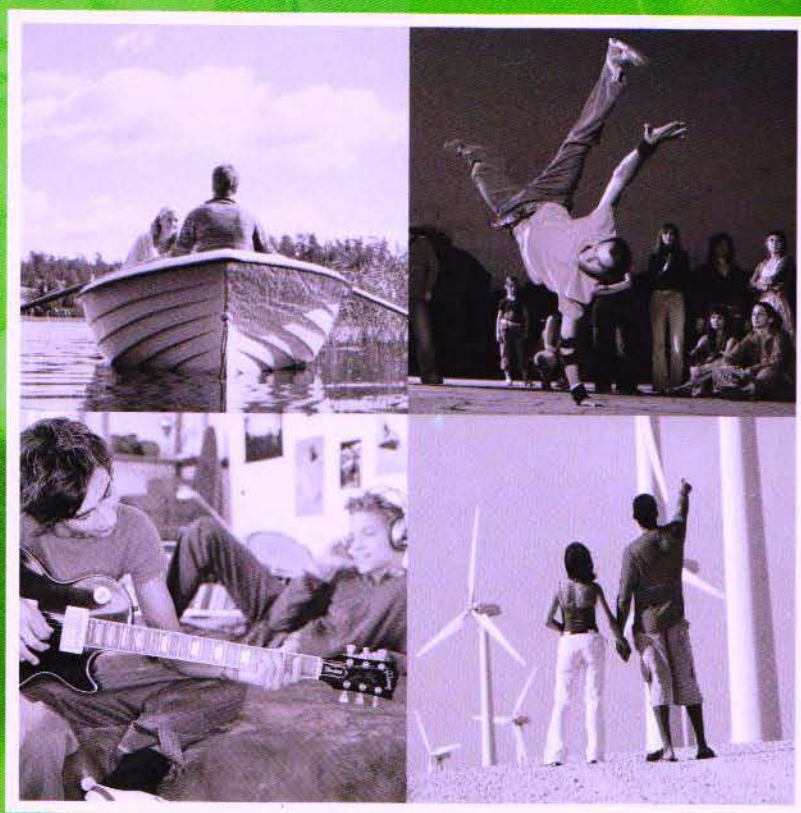


plus CD-ROM

# Challenges



## Workbook

# 3

*With extra  
Grammar Reference  
and practice  
exercises by Anna  
Sikorzyńska*



PEARSON  
Longman

Amanda Maris



Module 1

# Challenges



## Workbook

# 3



PEARSON  
Longman

Amanda Maris



## Get Ready

### Vocabulary: School facilities

- 1 Find the missing words and complete the sentences.

room laboratory studio room pitch court pool

1

I love painting and drawing, so I'm always in the art room.

2

I like tennis but we don't have any tennis court in my town.

3

We've got an indoor swimming pool at our school. It's great!

4

I'm learning French and Spanish, so I use the language laboratory a lot.

5

My school has a new football pitch and I'm in the girls' team!

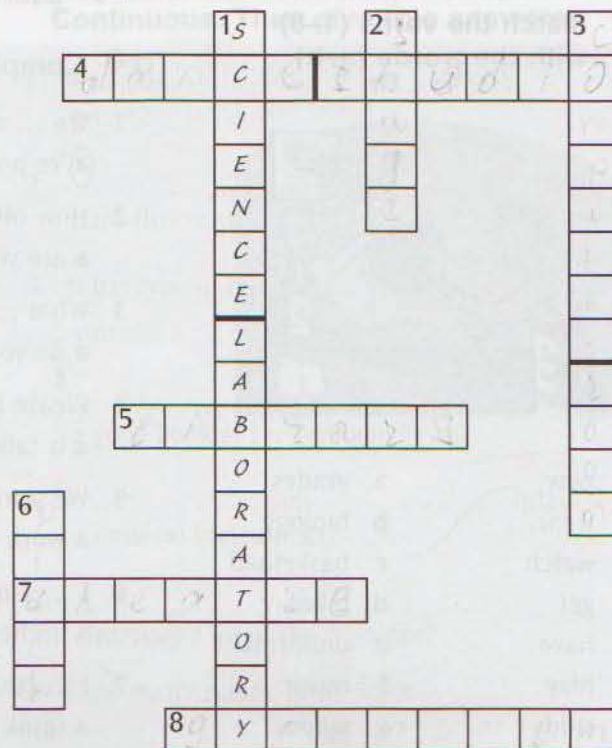
6

I want to make a CD but we haven't got a recording studio near here.

7

There's a great music room at our school. I have guitar lessons there.

- 2 Complete the crossword.



#### Across

- 4 ✓ You do ballet here.  
5 ✓ You borrow books from here.  
7 ✓ You watch plays here.  
8 ✓ You do gymnastics here.

#### Down

- 1 ✓ You study chemistry and biology here.  
2 ✓ You act and dance on this.  
3 ✓ You surf the Internet here.  
6 You play hockey on this.

### Listening

- 3 Listen to three interviews with students at a school of performing arts. Choose the correct information.

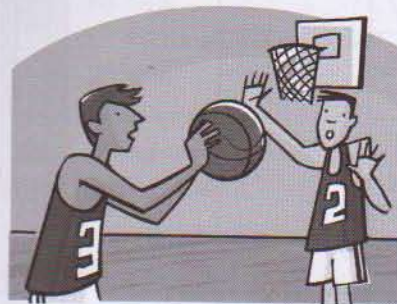
- 1 Joe is fifteen/sixteen. He's interested in *drama/dance*. He does *jazz/classical* dance. He can also *sing/act*.  
2 Amy is *sixteen/seventeen*. She's good at *music/singing*. She doesn't play the *piano/flute*.  
3 Michael is *fifteen/sixteen*. He wants *acting/dancing* classes. He acts in plays at *school/drama school*.



# 1 Vocabulary and Grammar

## Vocabulary: School activities

1 Match the verbs (1–8) with the words (a–h).



- |         |              |
|---------|--------------|
| 1 play  | a grades     |
| 2 wear  | b biology    |
| 3 watch | c basketball |
| 4 get   | d bikes      |
| 5 have  | e uniforms   |
| 6 play  | f music      |
| 7 study | g videos     |
| 8 ride  | h tests      |

2 Choose the correct words.

- We have/get seven lessons a day.
- We never talk *to/about* politics at school.
- We often *make/go on* school trips.
- I'm *playing/training* for a match at the moment.
- We're working *on/for* a project this term.
- My class *puts/acts* on a play every year.
- I don't go *to/on* classes on Saturdays.
- I try to *help/work* other students in class.

3 Tick (✓) the sentences in Exercise 2 that are true for you.

## Grammar: Present Simple and Present Continuous

→ Grammar Reference, page 107

4 Complete the sentences. Choose a or b.

- We ... a performance for a show at the moment.  
(a) 're preparing      b prepare
- How often ... on school trips?  
a are you going      b do you go
- What ... in history this term?  
a do you study      b are you studying
- Please listen! The teacher ...  
a is talking      b talks
- We sometimes ... on projects with other classes.  
a work      b are working
- I ... a music lesson once a week.  
a 'm having      b have
- I ... that science is interesting.  
a think      b 'm thinking
- 'Where's Mr King?' 'He ... in room 12.'  
a 's teaching      b teaches

5 Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

**Mark:** Hi, Helen. It's Mark. 1...*I'm ringing*... (ring) to ask you about your new school.

**Helen:** Hi, Mark. School is fine, thanks. I 2..... (like) the teachers and the other students. We 3..... (not wear) a uniform and that's great! We 4..... (have) tests every week, though, and I 5..... (do) a lot of homework every day.

**Mark:** Poor thing! I 6..... (prepare) for a music exam at the moment, so I'm really busy.

**Helen:** 7..... you ..... (work) on the school play this term, too?

**Mark:** Yes, Jo and I 8..... (write) some songs now. She 9..... also ..... (learn) to play the guitar, too. What 10..... you ..... (do) at the weekends?

**Helen:** I 11..... (play) tennis every Saturday and on Sunday I 12..... (relax)!



**6 Find and correct one mistake in each text.**

1

**Computer Club**

*We meet*  
~~We're meet~~ every Thursday  
 of 4.30 p.m.

2

Message 15

I can't come to the cinema. I do my homework at the moment.

3

Don't turn off the video recorder. I'm record a film.

4

Kim get up early every morning to walk to school.

5

We're prepareing for a show at the moment.

6

Sam: What you do after school?  
 Pavel: I usually see my friends.

**Your Turn**

**7 Complete the questions with the correct form of the Present Simple or Present Continuous. Then give true answers.**

- 1 What sports *do* you *play* (play)?
- 2 ..... you ..... (train) hard this term?
- 3 What type of books ..... you ..... (read)?
- 4 ..... you ..... (read) a good book at the moment?
- 5 ..... you ..... (play) a musical instrument?
- 6 ..... you ..... (practise) a lot at the moment?
- 7 How many hours' homework ..... you ..... (do) every week?
- 8 ..... you ..... (do) more homework this week?
- 9 How often ..... you ..... (go) to the library?
- 10 ..... you ..... (use) any library books at the moment?

**8 Complete the sentences to make them true for you.**

- 1 I ..... a uniform at school.
- 2 I ..... tests every week.
- 3 At the moment, I' ..... studying .....
- 4 We ..... working on ..... this term.
- 5 I ..... getting ..... grades at the moment.
- 6 My class ..... once a term.
- 7 We ..... every day at school.
- 8 We never ..... at school.



## Vocabulary: School

- 1 Match the words from A and B and complete the sentences.

A sports boarding common after-school house

B pitch activities points school room

- We play football on the school ...*sports pitch*.....
- We have a ..... for doing homework.
- I like seeing my family every day. I don't want to go to a .....
- I got six ..... for doing good work.
- There aren't any ..... at my school, so I go straight home after class.

## Reading

- 3 Read about the students (1–4) and the schools (a–f). Decide which school would be most suitable for each student.

1 Nina is sixteen and she loves classical music. She plays in concerts and she wants to learn to act. She doesn't want to go to a boarding school.

c



Nina

2 Karl is fifteen. He enjoys languages at school, but his favourite thing is sport. His parents are going to work in Africa for a year but he wants to stay in England.

a



Karl

3 Kim is eighteen. She's very good at languages but her ambition is to be a professional swimmer. She wants to do a short course to improve her skills in the water.

d



Kim

4 Jo, twelve, and his sister Emma, fourteen, are on an exchange from the USA. They don't like sport but they want to get together with other teenagers and have fun.

e



Jo Emma

- 2 Read the definitions. Complete the words.

- maths is one of these *s u b j e c t*
- the way you act or behave b \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ r
- money you pay to a private school f \_ e \_
- a place where students sleep d \_ \_ i \_ \_ y
- another word for *student* p \_ \_ \_ \_

## Recommended Schools

### a Hilliers School for Boys

Hilliers is a boarding school for 1,000 boys aged 11–18. Students get good grades in all subjects. We have excellent sports facilities and offer training in rugby, tennis, swimming, cricket and judo.

### b InterEurope School

InterEurope is a new school with a special interest in languages. We offer classes in French, German, Spanish, Russian and Mandarin Chinese. All pupils go on an international exchange every summer.

### c Greybridge School

Greybridge School is open to girls aged 11–18. Our 750 students receive an excellent education with special facilities for drama and music. Students put on a show once a term.

### d Southbank Sports Academy

Open to boys and girls of 16–18, Southbank Sports Academy offers two-week courses in 20 sports including swimming, football, hockey and basketball. Many of our teachers are professional sportsmen and women.

### e Act Now!

Opened in 2005, Act Now! is a summer school for students interested in drama and music. We offer courses for teenagers aged 11–14. We have our own theatre and modern recording studio.

### f King's Boarding School

Opened in 1920, King's takes boys and girls from 16–18. We have comfortable dormitories and excellent facilities for languages, music and drama. Pupils can take part in classical concerts, plays and shows.



- 4 Complete the questions with the verbs in the box. Use the meanings in brackets to help you.

### Word Builder

take off   take part in   take care of  
take off   take place   take up

- Which airport do planes *take off*... from in your capital city? (leave the ground)
- Which shoe do you ..... first, right or left? (remove)
- What sports do you ..... at school? (participate in)
- Do you have to ..... a younger brother or sister? (look after)
- Would you like to ..... violin lessons? (start)
- Where do concerts ..... in your town? (happen)

### 5 Choose the correct words.

- I get together / in with my friends every weekend.
- Get on / up the bus. It's ready to leave.
- I have to get off / up early every morning.
- I get in / on well with my music teacher.
- The man got into / out of his car and drove away.

### 6 Complete the second sentence to mean the same as the first. Use between one and three words.

#### Sentence Builder

- Jo is younger than Emma.  
Jo isn't as old as Emma.
- Jo's interests are different from Emma's interests.  
Jo's interests aren't ..... Emma's interests.
- Karl isn't as old as Nina.  
Karl is younger .....
- Day schools aren't as expensive as boarding schools.  
Boarding schools are ..... day schools.
- I've got the same number of points as you.  
I've got ..... points as you.

### Your Turn

#### 7 Write true sentences with the words.

##### Example

I / tall / my best friend

*I'm as tall as my best friend. OR  
I'm not as tall as my best friend. OR  
I'm taller than my best friend.*

- I / tall / my best friend  
.....
  - history / interesting / geography  
.....
  - my school / as many students / my friend's school  
.....
  - classical music / exciting / rap  
.....
  - skating / difficult / swimming  
.....
  - my town / as many people / the capital city  
.....
- 8 Complete the sentences to make them true for you. Use *is/are the same as* or *isn't/aren't the same as*.
- My hair colour ..... my mum's hair colour.
  - My friend's favourite subject ..... as my favourite subject.
  - My teachers ..... my best friend's teachers.
  - My English books ..... my friends' English books.
  - My favourite pop group ..... my friend's favourite pop group.
  - My interests ..... my best friend's interests.



# 3 Communication

## Key Expressions: Preferences

### 1 Put the expressions in the correct order (1 = strongest).

- I like classical music.
- I can't stand classical music.
- I don't mind classical music.
- I hate classical music.
- I don't like classical music much.

7

### 2 Choose the correct words.

#### Part 1

'You <sup>1</sup>~~not~~/don't like school much  
 You can't stand <sup>2</sup>clean/cleaning  
 You hate <sup>3</sup>doing/do homework  
 You spend your life dreaming!'

#### Part 2

'I prefer <sup>4</sup>singing/song to <sup>5</sup>works/working  
 I like <sup>6</sup>playing/play the guitar  
<sup>7</sup>I'd like/I like to be on the stage  
 I'm going to be a big star!'

#### Part 3

'I don't <sup>8</sup>stand/mind music  
 But it isn't my ambition.  
 I'd <sup>9</sup>prefer/rather get a good job –  
 I'd like <sup>10</sup>be/to be a politician!'

#### Part 4

'I can't <sup>11</sup>stand/like politics  
 It's just not cool  
 I much prefer <sup>12</sup>dance/dancing  
 And singing by the pool.'

### 3 Look at the picture. Who is talking in each part of the poem?



### 4 Who do you agree with, Matt or Anna?

## Your Turn

### 5 Change the underlined information to make true sentences.

- 1 I like playing basketball.
- 2 I can't stand spiders.
- 3 I don't mind maths.
- 4 I hate being ill.
- 5 I don't like animals much.
- 6 I prefer skiing to swimming.
- 7 I'd like to be a musician.
- 8 I can't stand travelling by plane.

### 6 Complete the dialogues with the lines in the box. There are two sentences you don't need.

#### Sentence Builder

~~I like getting together with my friends.~~  
 - I'd rather go shopping than go swimming.  
 I'd like to be an actor.  
 We like going to the Internet café.  
 Yes, I'd like to see you at the weekend.  
 I'd like to go to the cinema on Saturday.  
 No, I prefer playing music to acting.

- 1 A: What do you do at the weekends?  
 B: I like getting together with my friends...
- 2 A: Do you like drama lessons?  
 B: .....
- 3 A: What would you like to do at the weekend?  
 B: .....
- 4 A: Would you like to go to the beach or stay in town?  
 B: .....
- 5 A: What do you and your friends do after school?  
 B: .....



## Your Turn

7 Imagine it is Saturday morning. Answer your friend's questions.

Friend: Would you like to go out this morning or stay in?

You: 1.....

Friend: What would you like to do?

You: 2.....

Friend: What about this afternoon? Would you rather go to town or go to the park?

You: 3.....

Friend: What would you like to do there?

You: 4.....

Friend: There's a chat show and a soap on TV tonight. Which do you prefer?

You: 5.....

Friend: Okay, that's fine.

## Useful Language

8 Complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

Pleased call with right over there  
Really meet this is

Tim: Hi, I'm Tim.

Emma: My name's Emma. 1. *Pleased* to meet you.

Tim: So, you like music. Is that 2.....?

Emma: Well, I'm more interested in art.

Tim: 3.....? Well, the art teacher, Mr Lee, is 4..... He's the guy 5..... the long hair. Come and 6..... him.

Mr Lee: Hi, you two.

Tim: Mr Lee, 7..... Emma. She's interested in art.

Mr Lee: Oh, 8..... me Jim. So, Emma, would you like to do an art class here?

Emma: Yes, I'd like really like to do some painting.

## Listening

9 Listen to three dialogues and answer the questions. Choose a, b or c.

1 What doesn't Vicky like doing?

a ☐



b ☐

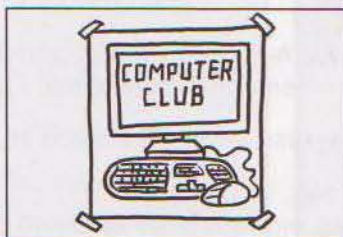


c ☐



2 Which club does Andy want to join?

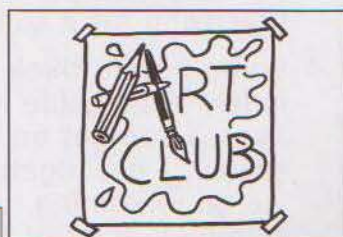
a ☐



b ☐



c ☐



3 When does the music course start?

a ☐



b ☐



c ☐





# Reading Corner 1

1 Match the different ways of getting an education (1–4) with the explanations (a–d).

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| 1 a day school      | a studying at home with your parents as 'teachers'           |
| 2 a boarding school | b having lessons but staying at school at the end of the day |
| 3 a private tutor   | c having lessons and going home at the end of the day        |
| 4 home education    | d paying for extra lessons from a teacher                    |

2 Read the first paragraph of the text. How does Leo get an education?

3 Read the whole text and complete the diagram for a weekday for Leo. Use the verbs in the box.

## A day in the life of Leo Thomas

- My name's Leo. I'm sixteen and I'm a student. I study for about twenty hours a week but I don't go to school. No, I'm not breaking the rules – I'm home-educated. That means I study at home and my parents help me with my education.
- I started home education about twelve months ago and I really like it. I didn't like my old school because I didn't learn very much. And the uniform was awful! I prefer wearing my own clothes every day. I like organising my own timetable, too, with my parents' help! They are quite strict, so I have to work hard. I do my exams at my old school, but that's only once or twice a year. I use the Internet a lot for my studies and we've got lots of books at home. I sometimes use the local library, too. This week, I'm doing a project on the environment.
- So, what do I do every day? Well, I get up at about 8 a.m. and have breakfast. I start studying at about 10. I don't have formal lessons, so I sometimes work with my parents and sometimes alone. I study the same subjects as in school, but I organise my own work. I finish for lunch at about 12.30 p.m. I usually study again in the afternoon and I always do some music practice. I play the saxophone until about 5 p.m. I'm practising for a competition at the moment.
- Some people think that home-educated kids are lonely but my life is the same as most teenagers' lives. I still get on well with all my friends from school. I get together with them every week and we go swimming, watch a DVD or go shopping. I also have a lot of friends on the Internet. I e-mail other home-educated kids and we exchange ideas and information.
- Are there any problems with home education? Well, I never go on school trips and I can't take part in school plays or concerts. I don't really mind that because I prefer learning at home to being at school.

get up   have lunch  
start studying  
have breakfast  
finish music practice  
continue studying

8 a.m.   1 *get up* .....

2 .....

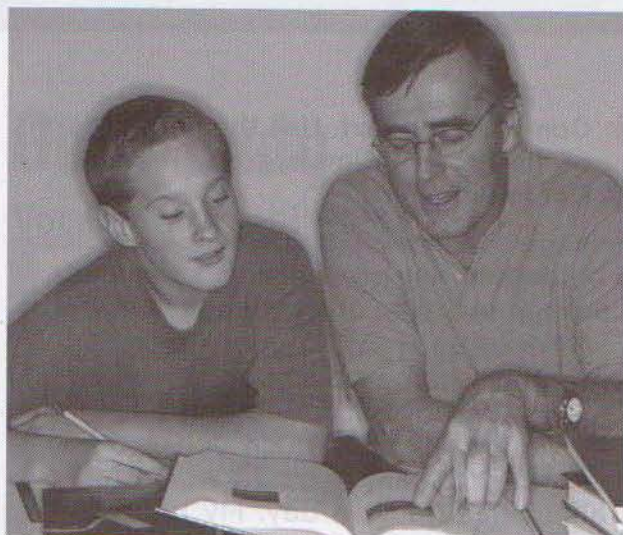
10 a.m.   3 .....

12.30 p.m.   4 .....

5 .....

5 p.m.   6 .....





### 4 Read the text again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Leo started home education two years ago. ☒ F
- 2 He didn't make much progress at his old school. ☐
- 3 Leo's parents decide his timetable for him. ☐
- 4 Leo can use a computer. ☐
- 5 He studies different subjects from students at school. ☐
- 6 He doesn't see his friends very often. ☐
- 7 He can contact other home-educated students. ☐
- 8 Leo doesn't want to go back to studying at school. ☐

### 5 Who is talking: Leo (L), his mum (M), his old teacher (T) or his friend (F)?

- 1 'I'm surfing the Internet to find some information for my project.' ☒ L
- 2 'Leo was good at music. He came to my music club every week.' ☐
- 3 'I like being with my friends at school, so I wouldn't like to study at home.' ☐
- 4 'Leo is at home a lot so we have more time together.' ☐
- 5 'I don't think I'm different from any other teenager.' ☐
- 6 'Leo did his exams here last term and he got good grades.' ☐
- 7 'I haven't got a home computer so I couldn't study from home.' ☐
- 8 'Leo doesn't always get on with his work, he can be a bit lazy sometimes.' ☐

### 6 Look at the sentences in the box. Write them in the correct list.

Students can organise their own time.  
Students can feel lonely.  
You don't have to wait to use a computer.  
Students don't see people of their own age.  
Student can't take part in school activities.  
There is bullying at some schools.

Home education  
Advantages

Students can organise their own time.

Disadvantages

### 7 Which points from Exercise 6 are in the text?

### 8 Imagine you are home-educated. Write your ideal routine and timetable.

Times	Subject/Activities
morning	get up
	have breakfast
	.....
afternoon	.....
	have lunch
	.....
evening	.....
	finish studying
	.....

### 9 Answer the questions.

- 1 Do you know anyone who is home-educated?
- 2 What do you think of Leo's life?
- 3 Would you like to be home-educated?



# Language Check 1

## Vocabulary

### 1 Match the verb with the correct place.

- |                     |                                       |                      |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 borrow books      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> c | a computer room      |
| 2 surf the Internet | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> d | b science laboratory |
| 3 play hockey       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> e | c library            |
| 4 do an experiment  | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> f | d tennis courts      |
| 5 act in a play     | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> g | e hockey pitch       |
| 6 play tennis       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> h | f stage              |
| 7 do gymnastics     | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> i | g gymnasium          |
| 8 paint a picture   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> a | h theatre            |
| 9 watch a play      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> b | i art room           |

☐ / 8

### 2 Complete the sentences with these verbs.

get up get on with take off get together  
take care of get on take part in take up

Example What time do you get up?

- Would you like to ..... the school concert?
- I don't ..... my older sister very well.
- Please ..... your hat in church.
- When do you ..... with your friends?
- I have to ..... my brother at weekends.
- Where did you ..... the train?
- Would you like to ..... a new hobby?

☐ / 7

## Grammar

### 3 Correct the underlined mistakes.

Example 'm studying  
I study for exam at the moment.

- You're not phoning me very often.
- What are you wearing for school every day?
- We do a project this month.
- We are never going on school trips.
- What happens at school this week?
- Do you do exams this week?
- A lot of students are loving art.
- How often are you seeing your friends?

☐ / 8

### 4 Complete the text. Use the correct form of the Present Simple or the Present Continuous.

Hi Jemma

My name's Leo. I hope you  
are enjoying (enjoy) your first  
month of home education. I  
1..... (study) at home and I  
2..... (think) it's much better than  
school! I usually 3..... (work) for  
about five hours a day. My mum  
4..... (not give) me 'lessons' every  
day but she 5..... (help) me a lot.  
This month we 6..... (learn) about  
Europe. My weekends are usually  
free, but I 7..... (practise) the  
saxophone a lot at the moment for a  
music exam.

Good luck!

Leo

☐ / 7

## Key Expressions

### 5 Complete the sentences with these words.

prefer mind stand rather like hate

Example I prefer painting to drawing.

- I can't ..... hockey. I think it's boring.
- Would you ..... be a singer or an actress?
- Why do you ..... wearing a uniform? I think it's okay.
- I don't like French but I don't ..... maths.
- What would you ..... to do after school?

☐ / 5

## What's your score?

### Module 1

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Vocabulary      | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Grammar         | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Key Expressions | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> / 35 Total      |                       |

This is easy. 😊

I need more practice. 😐

This is difficult. 😞



## Get Ready

### Vocabulary: Abilities

- 1 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets and the pairs of words in the box.

communicating / languages  
sport / gymnastics singing / music  
science / making things painting / writing

- 1 They *'re good at communicating and languages*... (good)
- 2 They..... (brilliant)
- 3 He..... (good)
- 4 They..... (brilliant)
- 5 They..... (good)

- 3 Find seven more adjectives in the word square.

A	D	P	A	T	H	L	E	T	I	C
M	N	R	O	P	C	G	H	L	M	R
I	M	A	G	I	N	A	T	I	V	E
M	E	C	R	H	C	Z	A	F	P	A
U	B	T	A	U	I	W	L	B	V	T
S	O	I	H	D	J	P	E	N	X	I
I	P	C	K	U	K	B	N	X	E	V
C	Q	A	R	T	I	S	T	I	C	E
A	U	L	S	I	V	B	E	A	R	T
L	O	G	I	C	A	L	D	K	L	P
W	L	O	P	V	N	M	C	X	Z	Y

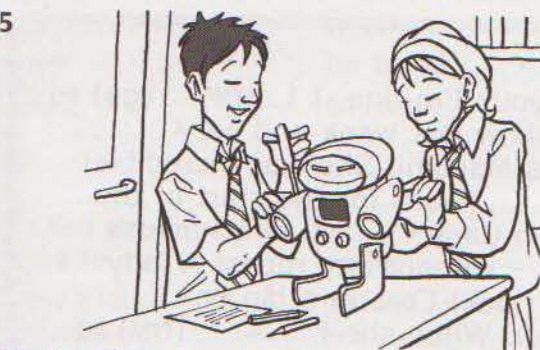
### Your Turn

- 4 Write three sentences about famous people that you admire.

- 1 I admire..... because.....
- 2 I admire..... because.....
- 3 I admire..... because.....

- 5 Complete the sentences with the names of students in your class/school.

- 1..... is the most talented footballer.
- 2..... is brilliant at languages.
- 3..... is very creative and imaginative.
- 4..... is good at maths and science.
- 5..... is the most talented musician.



### Listening

- 2 Listen to four teenagers talking about people they admire. Match the lines in columns A, B and C.

<b>A</b>	Helen		<b>B</b>	his/her grandfather		<b>C</b>	he/she is good at music.
Adam	admires		his/her sister	because		he/she is very creative.	
Liz			his/her brother			he/she is good at sport.	
Ian			his/her best friend			he/she is very talented.	



# 4 Vocabulary and Grammar

## Vocabulary: Magic

### 1 Match the words (1–8) with the definitions (a–h).

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 1 magician      | a something that you open with a key                               |
| 2 trick         | b an act that needs special skill and confuses or surprises people |
| 3 escape artist | c a strong cord used for climbing                                  |
| 4 levitate      | d to rise and float through the air                                |
| 5 lock          | e a person who makes things or people invisible                    |
| 6 handcuffs     | f a person who performs magic                                      |
| 7 rope          | g two metal rings used to lock people's hands                      |
| 8 illusionist   | h a person who escapes from difficult places to entertain people   |



## Grammar: Past Simple and Past Continuous

→ Grammar Reference, page 109

### 2 Match the sentence beginnings (1–6) with the endings (a–f).

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 The audience were looking at the illusionist | a I made a lot of mistakes.                                 |
| 2 My dad learnt some magic tricks              | b when he was working in the theatre.                       |
| 3 When the acrobat was hanging on a rope,      | c I dropped some of them on the floor.                      |
| 4 When I was trying to do a card trick,        | d when the escape artist was trying to get out of the tank. |
| 5 The audience didn't make a sound             | e when he suddenly disappeared.                             |
| 6 When I was learning to become a magician,    | f she fell and broke her leg.                               |

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use the Past Simple or the Past Continuous.

watch / disappear   meet / work   practise / learn   have / try  
watch / know   hold / change

- When the magician *was holding* a piece of paper, it *changed* into some money.
- When we ..... the trick, the rabbit .....
- The magician ..... his assistant when he ..... in the USA.
- When I ..... a trick on TV for the first time, I ..... I wanted to be a magician.
- The escape artist ..... an accident when she ..... to get out of the safe.
- I ..... every day when I ..... to be a magician.

### 4 Complete David's e-mail with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the Past Simple or the Past Continuous.

#### SEE CARA MANDINI

#### The Best Magic Show on Earth

- ★ Watch Cara fly across the stage ★
- ★ Lock Cara in a box and see her escape ★
- ★ Try being a magician's assistant ★

Hi Emily

How are you? I'm fine. I 1. *went* (go) to a magic show last week and we 2. .... (see) Cara Mandini. She was incredible! We 3. .... (wait) for the start of the show when Cara 4. .... (fly) across the stage – without any ropes! A lady 5. .... (lock) Cara in a big box underwater. When she 6. .... (try) to escape, the audience 7. .... (not say) a word. We were all so nervous! Later I even 8. .... (help) her to do some card tricks. It was brilliant!

David



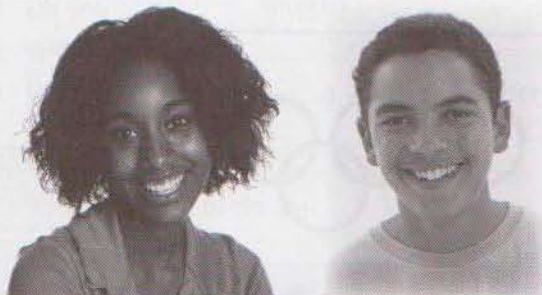
## Grammar: *had to/didn't have to; could/couldn't*

→ Grammar Reference, page 109

### 5 Choose the correct forms.

- 1 I couldn't/can't do tricks when I was young.
- 2 I won tickets for the show so we *had to/didn't have to* pay.
- 3 What was the first trick you *could/can* do?
- 4 The trick was amazing. We *didn't have to/couldn't* believe our eyes!
- 5 I *have to/had to* practise for years before I became an acrobat.
- 6 The audience was worried because the escape artist *could/couldn't* unlock the handcuffs.
- 7 I learn tricks very quickly so I *can't/don't* have to practise much.
- 8 The magician performed in the street so he *didn't have to/couldn't* find a theatre.

### 6 Look at the tables then read the text about Cara and Marvin. Correct eight more mistakes in the text.



#### When Cara was ten, she:

had to		could	
buy a lot of equipment	✗	do card tricks	✓
practise every day	✗	entertain her friends	✓
keep fit	✓	do escape tricks	✗

#### When Marvin was ten, he:

had to		could	
buy a lot of equipment	✗	perform in front of an audience	✗
watch other magicians	✓	make things disappear	✓
make new tricks	✗	do card tricks	✗

## Young Magicians

Cara started doing magic when she was six. She ~~had to~~ <sup>didn't have to</sup> buy a lot of equipment. She was a good magician so she couldn't practise every day. She was an acrobat so she has to keep fit. When she was ten, she couldn't do a lot of card tricks. She could entertain her friends but she had to do escape tricks.

Marvin started doing magic when he was ten. He ~~couldn't~~ <sup>didn't have to</sup> buy a lot of equipment and so his progress was quite slow. He wanted to improve and so he have to watch other magicians. He couldn't invent new tricks because he copied other magicians. He was very nervous so he didn't have to perform in front of an audience. He couldn't make things disappear but he couldn't do card tricks.

## Your Turn

- 7 Think about when you were ten years old. Complete the sentences to make them true for you.

### Skills

#### Example

*I could do magic tricks. OR  
I couldn't do magic tricks.*

- 1 I ..... magic tricks.
- 2 I ..... chess.
- 3 I ..... a bike.
- 4 I ..... English.
- 5 I ..... photos.

### Rules

#### Example

*I had to get good grades. OR  
I didn't have to get good grades.*

- 1 I ..... good grades.
- 2 I ..... a school uniform.
- 3 I ..... a test every week.
- 4 I ..... sport.
- 5 I ..... to bed early.



## Vocabulary: Talented women

- 1 Complete the sentences with the pairs of words in the box.

came from / family    became / well-known  
has performed / works    believed / rights  
uses / initials    take / seriously

- 1 Emily Brontë *came from a family*... of writers. Her sisters wrote books, too.
- 2 J K Rowling ..... her ..... when she publishes her Harry Potter books.
- 3 Mia Hamm was one of the first female football stars. She made people ..... women's football .....
- 4 Emmeline Pankhurst ..... in women's ..... She fought for the vote for women in the 1800s.
- 5 Kiri Te Kanawa is an opera singer. She ..... by Mozart and Strauss all over the world.
- 6 Rosalind Franklin contributed to the discovery of DNA but she only ..... after her death.

## Reading

- 2 Read the statements about women in sport. Read the text and decide if they are correct (C) or incorrect (I).

- 1 Both men and women took part in the ancient Olympic Games. ☒
- 2 Some women wore men's clothes to be able to attend the games. ☐
- 3 Women didn't take part in the first modern Olympic Games. ☐
- 4 Women first participated in the Olympic Games in 1900. ☐
- 5 Leontien Zijlstra-van Moorsel has won ten gold medals. ☐
- 6 Janica Kostelić won two medals at the Winter Olympics in Turin. ☐
- 7 Women are playing football against men nowadays. ☐
- 8 The best female football teams come from Europe. ☐



## Women in Sport

The first ancient Olympic Games date back to 776 BC but in those days only men could compete. Married women were not allowed to take part in the games, or even to watch them. Only single women could attend the competition. Some women did not accept this and dressed up as men to go to the games.

- 10 Although females couldn't compete in the ancient Olympic Games, they had their own opportunities for sporting competition. The Heraean Games were for female athletes. They took place every four years to honour the goddess Hera, wife of Zeus.

- 15 The first modern Olympic Games were in 1896 in Athens. Fourteen nations took part in 43 events with 241 athletes – 241 men and no women. Women made their first appearance in the modern games four years later in Paris. There were 22 female competitors. Charlotte Cooper, a British tennis player, became the first woman to win an Olympic gold medal.

- 25 In the following decades, talented sportswomen have continued to participate in both the Olympic Games and the Winter Olympics. They have achieved greater and greater success in a huge range of sports.
- 30 In Athens 2004, Leontien Zijlstra-van Moorsel from Holland became the first female cyclist to win four gold medals and six medals in total. At the Winter Olympics in Turin in 2006, Janica Kostelić from Croatia won a gold and a silver medal.
- 35 With a total of four gold medals and two silver in her career, she holds the record for medals won by a woman in Alpine skiing.

- 40 Outside the Olympics, women are involved in a number of sports traditionally played by men. Women's football is becoming increasingly popular. Two of the strongest female teams are the USA and Brazil. However, many European countries have national teams in the top 30 including England, Spain, Czech Republic, and Serbia and Montenegro.
- 45



### 3 Read the text again. What do these numbers refer to?

- 1 776 BC (line 2) *first ancient Olympic Games*
- 2 four (line 13) .....
- 3 241 (line 17) .....
- 4 2006 (line 33) .....
- 5 two (line 35) .....
- 6 30 (line 45) .....

### 4 Match the verbs from A with the prepositions from B and complete the questions.

#### Word Builder

A look believe think work come  
talk look

B at after of with from in to

- 1 How often do you *look at* at modern art?
- 2 Who do you ..... when you feel sad?
- 3 Do you ..... ghosts?
- 4 Where do you ..... ?
- 5 Do you ever ..... a younger brother or sister?
- 6 What do you ..... classical music?
- 7 What equipment do you ..... in science lessons?

### 5 Write true answers to the questions in Exercise 4.

### 6 Correct the underlined mistakes.

Last weekend I was 1 waiting <sup>for</sup> my friend in a music shop. He was 2 paying a rap CD at the counter. I was thinking 3 to my favourite American rapper when I noticed that a classical CD was at number 1. I don't know much 4 of classical music, so I decided to listen 5 at it. I really liked it. When I told my friend, he couldn't believe it. I said, 'Don't worry 6 of me. Rap is still my favourite music!'

### 7 Choose the correct form of the verbs.

#### Sentence Builder

- 1 When I was doing ~~did~~ my homework, my friend rang ~~was ringing~~.
- 2 While we walked ~~were walking~~ to school, we were seeing ~~saw~~ an accident.
- 3 The students turned ~~were turning~~ off the lights when they were leaving ~~left~~ the classroom.
- 4 While you were taking ~~took~~ the dog for a walk, your friend was arriving ~~arrived~~.
- 5 My sister went ~~was going~~ to university when she finished ~~was finishing~~ her exams.
- 6 When I met ~~was meeting~~ Joe, I was liking ~~liked~~ him immediately.

### Your Turn

### 8 Complete the sentences to make them true for you.

- 1 When I was doing my homework last night, .....
- 2 When I got up this morning, .....
- 3 It was raining when my friends and I .....
- 4 My friend rang me while .....
- 5 We were watching TV when .....
- 6 While I was going to school last week, .....
- 7 I was doing some shopping when .....
- 8 When I was looking for a book in the library, ....

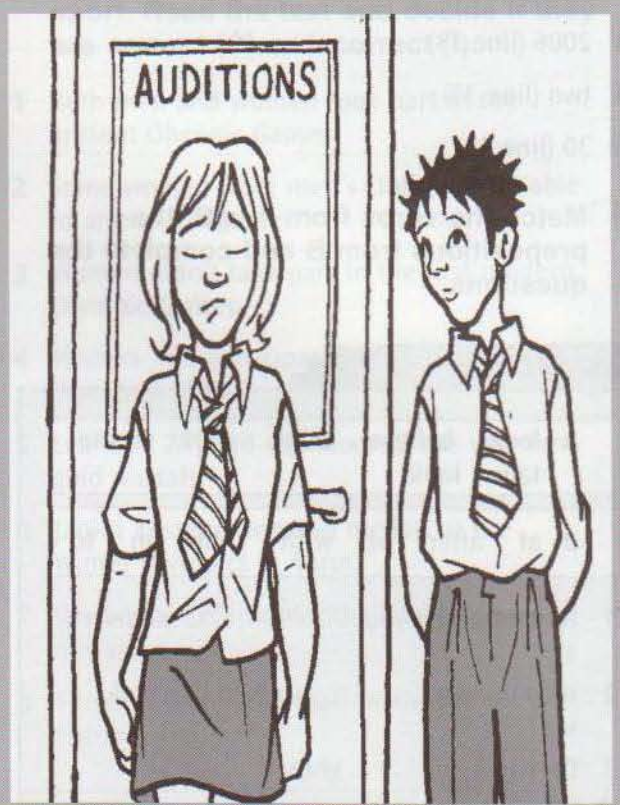


# 6 Communication

## Useful Language

### 1 Choose the correct words.

- Simon:** Hi, Emily. You don't look very happy.
- Emily:** No, my audition was a <sup>1</sup>~~disaste~~/horrible.
- Simon:** But you're a really good actress.
- Emily:** Thanks, but I'm not confident <sup>2</sup>like/as you. I always get really nervous. But <sup>3</sup>of/at least I didn't forget my words.
- Simon:** I'm sure you were fine, <sup>4</sup>honest/honestly. By the way, what <sup>5</sup>is/does the drama teacher like?
- Emily:** She's very nice and friendly.  
[The teacher calls from inside the room.]
- Teacher:** Simon next, please.
- Emily:** It's your <sup>6</sup>take/turn now. Good luck!
- Simon:** Thanks, but I'm wearing my <sup>7</sup>lucky/luck ring. It always helps me.
- Emily:** Are you superstitious? I don't believe in all <sup>8</sup>those/that stuff.
- Simon:** Well, I always perform well when I wear this ring.
- Emily:** Really? Can I borrow it next time?



## Key Expressions: Opinions

### 2 Read the dialogues. Does person B agree (A) or disagree (D)?

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1 A: The audition was very hard.<br>B: That's true.             | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A |
| 2 A: I don't think he's a very good actor.<br>B: I do.          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> D |
| 3 A: I don't believe in superstitions.<br>B: Neither do I.      | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| 4 A: I didn't enjoy the film.<br>B: Neither did I.              | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| 5 A: I believe in lucky colours.<br>B: I don't.                 | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| 6 A: I didn't think his performance was very good.<br>B: I did. | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| 7 A: Ann is a talented actress.<br>B: I don't think so.         | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| 8 A: I think plays are boring.<br>B: So do I.                   | <input type="checkbox"/>              |

### 3 Choose the correct expressions in brackets to complete the dialogue.

- Tina:** My audition was a disaster.
- Lucy:** <sup>1</sup> *I don't think so*... I think you were fine.  
(That's true./I don't think so.)
- Tina:** <sup>2</sup>..... I forgot my words in the middle of the song. (I don't./I do.)
- Lucy:** But everyone does that sometimes.
- Tina:** <sup>3</sup>..... It can happen to anyone.  
(That's true./I don't think so.)
- Lucy:** I didn't think the director was very good.
- Tina:** <sup>4</sup>..... He didn't help the actors at all. (Neither did I./I did.)
- Lucy:** But I really like the show.
- Tina:** <sup>5</sup>..... The songs in it are great.  
(I don't./So do I.)
- Lucy:** But I don't think I'll get the part.
- Tina:** <sup>6</sup>..... You've got a great voice.  
(I do./I don't.)



- 4 Eddie always agrees with with Oliver.  
Complete their conversation.

That's true. Neither did I. So do I.  
That's true. Neither do I. So do I.

Oliver: That football match was a disaster.

Eddie: 1 *That's true.*

Oliver: I didn't think we played very well.

Eddie: 2

Oliver: The other team were much better.

Eddie: 3

Oliver: I think their goalkeeper is really talented.

Eddie: 4

Oliver: I don't think we will win the next match.

Eddie: 5

Oliver: Why do you always agree with me? I think  
it's really annoying.

Eddie: 6

## Your Turn

- 5 Agree or disagree with these sentences.

Examples

I don't believe in superstitions.

*Neither do I. OR I do.*

Italy is the best football team in the world.

*That's true. OR I don't think so.*

- 1 I didn't think my last exam was very easy.  
.....
- 2 I don't believe in ghosts.  
.....
- 3 I think maths is easier than physics.  
.....
- 4 Life in the city is better than life in the country.  
.....
- 5 I didn't enjoy the last film I saw.  
.....
- 6 Girls are better at languages than boys.  
.....
- 7 I don't think Madonna is a very good singer.  
.....
- 8 I thought the last World Cup was boring.  
.....

- 6 Imagine your friends aren't happy with  
their performance in sport or in a show.  
Disagree with their opinions.

- 1 I played like a beginner.  
*I don't think so.*
- 2 I don't think I acted very well.  
.....
- 3 I thought I was really slow.  
.....
- 4 I think it was a disaster.  
.....
- 5 I didn't think my voice was very good.  
.....
- 6 Our team was terrible.  
.....

## Listening

- 7 Listen to Ann talking about  
superstitions. Answer the questions.  
Choose a, b or c.

- 1 Which group of people are very superstitious?  
a historians ☐  
b actors and actresses ☒  
c university tutors ☐
- 2 An actress shouldn't wear flowers  
a before a performance. ☐  
b after a performance. ☐  
c on stage. ☐
- 3 What do actors and actresses call *Macbeth*?  
a 'the Scottish play' ☐  
b 'Shakespeare's play' ☐  
c 'the actors' play' ☐
- 4 Actors and actresses shouldn't say  
a 'Goodbye.' ☐  
b 'Good performance.' ☐  
c 'Good luck!' ☐
- 5 An audience must be in the theatre for  
a the first line of a play. ☐  
b the last line of a play. ☐  
c the rehearsals of a play. ☐
- 6 What colour is unlucky for actors?  
a red ☐  
b green ☐  
c black ☐



# Writing Challenge

1 Read the e-mail and choose the correct words.

- 1 Simon/Emma is at boarding school.
- 2 Brighton/The school is by the sea.
- 3 Emma quite likes/hates the school.
- 4 Emma is/isn't studying new subjects.
- 5 Annette likes/doesn't like the same things as Emma.
- 6 Emma can/can't sing very well.

To: simon@mail.net

From: emma.lee@fastmail.uk

Subject: My first week

Hi Simon

- 1 How are you? I'm okay but a bit tired after my first week at boarding school. I arrived last Saturday. The nearest town is Brighton about 20 kilometres away. It's on the coast and there are some great places to visit.

1..... d.....

- 2 It's strange to be away from home but I don't mind the school. It's got a big sports hall and a new computer room. 2..... We study the same subjects as other schools but we have a lot of homework. 3..... It's strange to be in class at weekends!

- 3 Everyone here is quite friendly. I'm sharing a room with a girl called Annette. She's nice but we don't get together much because she has different interests from me.

4.....

- 4 I've joined the drama club. We're going to put on a musical play at the end of term. I only have a small part in the play but that's okay. 5..... That's good because my voice is terrible!

- 5 Anyway, that's all my news. I hope everything is okay with you. E-mail me soon.

Emma

2 Read the e-mail again. Write the correct letter (a-e) for the missing sentences (1-5).

- a There's also an outdoor swimming pool.
- b I don't sing in the play either.
- c We have lessons on Saturday mornings as well.
- d The shops are really cool, too.
- e Also her sister is at the school and they spend a lot of time together.

3 Write the linkers in brackets in the correct place in the sentences. Make any necessary changes.

- 1 There are about thirty teachers in the school.  
Also e Each house has a tutor. (Also)

- 2 They've got a great music room. (also)

- 3 We don't have to get up early on Sundays. (either)

- 4 There are boys at the school. (too)

- 5 We can go into the local town on Wednesday afternoons. (as well)

- 6 There's a new football pitch and a great sports hall. We have training twice a week. (Also)

4 Look at the e-mail in Exercise 1. Number the labels in the correct order.

the facilities and lessons

greeting

finishing line

the location of the school

activities

the people

1

5 Imagine you have moved to a different city and a new school. Write an e-mail to an English-speaking friend. Use the model in Exercise 1 and the labels in Exercise 4 to help you.



# Understanding Grammar: Question tags

→ Grammar Reference, page 111

## 1 Look at the underlined question tags and questions. Choose the correct words to complete the rules.

- 1 She's very talented, isn't she?

We use a *positive/negative* tag after a positive statement.

- 2 It wasn't a very good show, was it?

We use a *positive/negative* tag after a negative statement.

- 3 You haven't seen *Stormbreaker*, have you?

We use *the same/a different* auxiliary in the question tag.

- 4 She sings very well, doesn't she?

We use *do* or *does* for question tags in the *Present/Past Simple*.

- 5 They didn't win the match, did they?

We use *do/did* for question tags in the *Past Simple*.

- 6 I'm in the play, aren't I?

There is a special question tag for *Am I/I'm*.

## 2 Correct the underlined mistakes.

Jo: You're new at this school, <sup>aren't</sup> are you?

Liz: Yes, that's right.

Jo: You aren't from New York, <sup>do</sup> do you?

Liz: No, I was born in Quebec in Canada.

Jo: So, you speak English and French, <sup>aren't</sup> aren't you?

Liz: Yes, that's right.

Jo: You haven't been in the UK long, <sup>haven't</sup> haven't you?

Liz: No, only about three weeks.

Jo: And you like it here, <sup>did</sup> did you?

Liz: Sure, It's fine. I really enjoy the after-school clubs.

Jo: You can't act, <sup>do</sup> do you?

Liz: Well, I was in a few plays at my old school.

Jo: We need people in our drama club. You will join, <sup>don't</sup> don't you?

Liz: Okay, thanks.

Jo: Brilliant! Now, can I ask you ... ?

Liz: Er, it's time for class.

Jo: Oh sorry, I'm asking a lot of questions, <sup>amn't</sup> amn't I?

## 3 Complete these sentences with question tags.

- 1 You're from a musical family, *aren't you* ... ?

- 2 She's brilliant at gymnastics, ..... ?

- 3 You haven't got a part in the play, ..... ?

- 4 You can come to the show, ..... ?

- 5 The audience loved the play, ..... ?

- 6 The auditions will be in the hall, ..... ?

- 7 We aren't training today, ..... ?

- 8 You enjoy singing, ..... ?

## 4 Match the sentences (1–6) to the responses (a–h). There are two responses you don't need.

- |                                 |                 |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 I couldn't go to the concert. | a Is she?       |
| 2 I love singing and dancing.   | b Wasn't it?    |
| 3 She's going to be a big star. | c Does it?      |
| 4 The play lasts three hours.   | d Do you?       |
| 5 We didn't play very well.     | e Didn't you?   |
| 6 The story wasn't very good.   | f Was it?       |
|                                 | g Couldn't you? |
|                                 | h Did you?      |

## 5 Write questions to respond to these sentences.

- 1 My brother goes to drama school. *Does he* ... ?
- 2 I'm not very superstitious. .... ?
- 3 The singer's voice wasn't great. .... ?
- 4 My mum was a magician's assistant. .... ?
- 5 I've learnt some card tricks. .... ?
- 6 I'd like to work in films. .... ?
- 7 I can't play basketball. .... ?
- 8 I didn't enjoy the play very much. .... ?



# Language Check 2

## Vocabulary

- 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words.

talent logic music write practice  
athlete communicate create paint

Example

My sister can do anything. She's *talented*.

- He's so ..... – he plays four instruments.
- I can't do puzzles. I'm not very .....
- She likes discussion. She's very good at .....
- Did you make this? You're very .....
- I hate sport but my sister is quite .....
- It's easy to be good at ..... Just use your imagination.
- I can't draw and I'm not good at .....
- She's very ..... She repaired my bike.

☐ / 8

- 2 Choose the correct words.

Example How much did you pay *off/for* that?

- Do you believe *in/on* UFOs?
- Please wait *to/for* me after school.
- Can you look *about/after* my cat for me?
- Don't worry *of/about* your exams.
- How much do you know *about/of* science?
- My grandparents come *to/from* Hungary.
- What are you thinking *at/about*?

☐ / 7

## Grammar

- 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Example While you *were studying* (study), I *went* (go) out.

- What ..... you ..... (do) when you ..... (hear) the news?
- When we got to Spain, we ..... (not can) speak Spanish so we ..... (have to) take lessons.
- While I ..... (wait) for the bus, it ..... (start) to rain.
- When we ..... (get) our grades last week, we ..... (be) very pleased.

- 5 We ..... (have to) walk home yesterday because we ..... (not can) find a taxi.

☐ / 10

- 4 Complete the dialogue.

A: The concert is really good, *isn't it*?

B: Well, I'm not enjoying it much.

A: 1..... you?

B: No. They aren't playing very well.

A: But you enjoyed their last CD, 2.....?

B: Yes. It was number 1 for about six weeks.

A: 3..... it? I didn't know that.

B: Yes and they've just made a DVD, 4.....?

A: Yes, that's right. It will be in the shops next week, 5.....?

☐ / 5

## Key Expressions

- 5 Complete the second sentence. Follow the instructions in brackets.

Example He's a good actor. (disagree)

I don't think *so*.

- I think magicians are great. (agree)  
So .....
- I don't think we'll win the game. (disagree)  
I .....
- I don't believe in superstitions. (agree)  
Neither .....
- I didn't like the film. (disagree)  
I .....
- She's got a great voice. (agree)  
That's .....

☐ / 5

## What's your score?

### Module 2

- ☐ Vocabulary ☐ Grammar ☐ Key Expressions ☐ / 35 Total

This is easy. 😊

I need more practice. 😐

This is difficult. 😞



## Get Ready

### Vocabulary: Health (1)

1 Complete the poster with the words in the box.

insomnia portions allergy  
rowing headaches fizzy yoga  
flu overweight stress

### How to be a Healthy Teenager

Are you tired all the time because of

1 insomnia? Do you often get colds and

2 .....? Do you have a lot of

3 ..... from exams? Are you a little

4 ..... after eating too much?

Don't worry – just follow this simple advice:

#### Diet

- Try to eat five 5 ..... of fruit and vegetables a day. This helps you to stay healthy.
- If you get a lot of 6 ..... or stomach aches, you could have an 7 ..... to a type of food. Ask your doctor to do some tests.
- Eat healthy snacks like fruit, not chocolate or cakes.

#### Exercise

- Try different activities – team sports like basketball or water sports like 8 .....
- Activities like 9 ..... can help you to relax.

#### Lifestyle

- Don't smoke and avoid smoky places.
- Drink six glasses of water or juice a day. They are better for you than sweet, 10 ..... drinks like cola.



## Listening

3 Listen to Sam, Jenny and Mark. Write the correct name in each diary.

1 Name: .....

Smoke: no

Exercise: every day

Fruit and vegetables: every day

Colds: never

Allergies: no

2 Name: .....

Smoke: no

Exercise: three times a week

Fruit and vegetables: every day

Colds: twice a year

Allergies: no

3 Name: .....

Smoke: Yes for three months and then stopped

Exercise: never

Fruit and vegetables: once a week

Colds: every month

Allergies: cats

4 Who is healthiest: Sam, Jenny or Mark?

## Your Turn

5 Complete the diary for you.

Name: .....

Exercise: .....

Fruit and vegetables: .....

Colds: .....

Allergies: .....

2 Match the words with the definitions.

- |                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| 1 vaccination   | a doctors use this to treat infections         |
| 2 antibiotics   | b you take this if you have a headache         |
| 3 tiredness     | c you get this if you fall over in a match     |
| 4 painkiller    | d a treatment from plants                      |
| 5 acupuncture   | e this stops people from getting flu           |
| 6 herbal remedy | f a treatment with needles often used in China |
| 7 sports injury | g you suffer from this if you have insomnia    |



## Vocabulary: Diseases

### 1 Complete the names of the diseases.

- 1 A I D S
- 2 m \_ \_ s l \_ s
- 3 ch \_ l \_ r \_
- 4 wh \_ \_ p \_ ng c \_ \_ gh
- 5 m \_ l \_ r \_
- 6 ch \_ ck \_ n p \_ x
- 7 th \_ pl \_ g \_
- 8 pol \_ \_
- 9 m \_ mps
- 10 r \_ b \_ \_ s
- 11 t \_ b \_ rc \_ l \_ s \_ s (TB)
- 12 sm \_ llp \_ x

### 2 Choose the correct words.



- 1 My throat hurts. I can't stop coughing/sneezing.
- 2 Bacteria and *viruses/vaccines* can make people ill.
- 3 It's easy to get flu because it's *infection/ infectious*.
- 4 *Bacteria/Infections* are too small to see without a microscope.
- 5 Don't *infect/spread* colds. Always cover your face when you sneeze.
- 6 Bacteria can *infect/pass* from person to person through the air.

## Grammar: The passive

→ Grammar Reference, page 112

### 3 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Simple passive of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 Bacteria on your hands *are killed* (kill) if you wash with just water.
- 2 Twenty-two million schooldays ..... (lose) because of colds in the USA every year.
- 3 Bacteria ..... (not pass) on through food.
- 4 Colds ..... (not cause) by cold weather.
- 5 Antibiotics ..... (use) to treat flu.
- 6 Vitamin C ..... (find) in oranges.

### 4 Decide if the sentences in Exercise 3 are true (T) or false (F). Check your answers at the bottom of this page.

- |   |                            |                            |
|---|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> F | 3 <input type="checkbox"/> | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/>              | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> |

### 5 Complete the sentences. Use the Present Simple or Past Simple passive.

- 1 The nurse gives advice on health.  
Advice on health *is given by the nurse* .....
- 2 Drug companies produce medicines.  
Medicines .....
- 3 Two doctors examined me at the hospital.  
I .....
- 4 I broke my leg in an accident.  
My leg .....
- 5 The Chinese developed acupuncture.  
Acupuncture .....
- 6 Europeans took infectious diseases to America.  
Infectious diseases .....
- 7 Some doctors use herbal remedies and modern medicine.  
Herbals remedies and modern medicine .....
- 8 Vaccinations save people's lives.  
People's lives .....



- 6 Complete the questions in the quiz with the correct form of the verbs. Use the Present Simple or Past Simple passive.

## QUIZ

- 1 Who was the first heart transplant performed (perform) by?
- 2 When ..... contact lenses ..... (invent)?
- 3 What ..... (add) to toothpaste to help protect teeth?
- 4 Which vitamins ..... (find) in fish?



- 5 What ..... (develop) in the 1800s as a painkiller?
- 6 How much water ..... (need) by the body every day?



- 7 How many blood groups ..... (discover) in 1909 by Karl Landsteiner?
- 8 Which woman ..... (give) the Nobel Prize for Chemistry in 1911?



- 7 Match the questions (1–8) in Exercise 6 to the answers (a–h).

- |                       |                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| a Four.               | <input type="text" value="7"/> |
| b A and D.            | <input type="text"/>           |
| c Marie Curie.        | <input type="text"/>           |
| d Christiaan Barnard. | <input type="text"/>           |
| e About two litres.   | <input type="text"/>           |
| f Aspirin.            | <input type="text"/>           |
| g In 1887.            | <input type="text"/>           |
| h Fluoride.           | <input type="text"/>           |

## Your Turn

- 8 Write true sentences using the Present Simple or Past Simple passive.

Example

elections / hold (time) in my country

*Elections are held every four years in my country.*

I / be born in (year)

*I was born in 1990.*

- 1 my school / build in (year)  
.....
- 2 the post / deliver to my house at (time) every day  
.....
- 3 my mum / be born in (year)  
.....
- 4 (thing) / export / from my country  
.....
- 5 lots of people / employ at (place) in my town  
.....
- 6 my favourite song / record by (name)  
.....
- 7 my favourite meal / make from (food)  
.....
- 8 my favourite book / write by (name)  
.....



# 8 Skills

## Vocabulary: Words that go together

### 1 Match the words from A and B and complete the sentences.

A contain improve fall catch make  
cause damage

B spots asleep a difference your diet  
vitamins your eyesight a cold

- 1 I'm very tired. I didn't ... *fall asleep* ... until 2 a.m.
- 2 My skin is terrible. What things ..... ?
- 3 I stopped eating snacks but it didn't ..... to my weight.
- 4 You can't ..... just by being wet.
- 5 Can reading late at night ..... ?
- 6 Fresh vegetables ..... that you need every day.
- 7 You eat a lot of fast food. You need to .....

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the adjectives in brackets.

#### Word Builder

- 1 I failed the test because most of my answers were *incorrect*. (correct)
- 2 My mum was too ..... to run the marathon. (fit)
- 3 It's ..... to go to sleep in a noisy room. (possible)
- 4 Eating fast food every day is very ..... (healthy)
- 5 It's ..... that my team will win the competition. (likely)
- 6 I can't sleep because my bed is ..... (comfortable)
- 7 You ate my half of the chocolate. That was very ..... ! (fair)
- 8 Don't be so ..... ! Lunch will be ready in a minute. (patient)

### 3 Write sentences for the pictures (1-5). Use the words in the box.

#### Sentence Builder

important / wear a helmet  
unhealthy / breathe other people's smoke  
good for you / do yoga  
healthy / drink a lot of water  
dangerous / drive when you're tired



1 ..... *It's good for you to do yoga.* .....



2 .....



3 .....



4 .....



5 .....



## Reading

4 Read the text and answer the questions. Choose a, b, c or d.

## Time for sleep

Most teenagers need about 8.5 to 9 hours of sleep each night. Unfortunately, though, many teenagers don't get enough sleep.

Why don't teenagers get enough sleep?

Recent studies show that teenagers sleep in a different way from adults or children. During the teenage years, the body's biological clock changes. Most teenagers' bodies tell them to go to sleep late at night and wake up later in the morning. These changes happen when teenagers' lives are very busy. They need to do well at school but they have things to do like sports and after-school clubs as well. Most schools start early and so some teenagers only get six or seven hours of sleep a night.

### Why is sleep important?

Studies show that 20% of students fall asleep in class, and scientists say that lost sleep is linked with lower grades. Also, not sleeping affects teenagers' performance in sports. It can create feelings of sadness and depression, too.

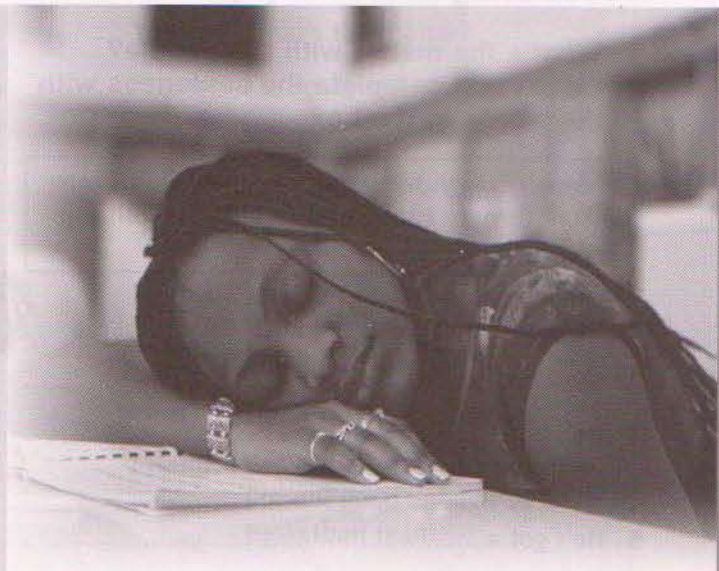
### How can I get more sleep?

● **Go to bed at the same time** This tells your body that it's time for sleep. Waking up at the same time every day also helps to create a sleep routine. Follow your routine even at weekends.

● **Exercise regularly** Scientists believe that exercising in the late afternoon can help you to sleep. Don't exercise just before bedtime, though.

● **Avoid caffeine, smoking and alcohol** Don't have drinks that contain caffeine after 4 p.m. Cigarettes and alcohol in the evening can also cause you to wake up during the night.

● **Relax your mind** Avoid action movies or scary TV shows just before bed. Reading books with complicated stories can also prevent sleep.



- **Turn off bright lights** Light tells the brain that it's time to wake up. Turning off bright lights (including computer screens!) can help your body to relax.
- **Don't sleep in the day** Sleeping more than thirty minutes during the day may stop you going to sleep later.
- **Check your bedroom** People sleep best in a cool, dark room. Close your curtains and turn down the temperature in your bedroom. Turn off noisy gadgets like CD players and TVs.

1 Why don't teenagers get enough sleep?

- a They go to bed very late. ☐
- b They wake up late. ☐
- c They need a different sleep routine from other people. ☒
- d They spend a lot of hours at school. ☐

2 What can happen if you don't get enough sleep?

- a You only get 20% in exams. ☐
- b You make people sad. ☐
- c You lose interest in sport. ☐
- d You don't get very good grades. ☐

3 What two things should teenagers do?

- a exercise in the evening and get up later at weekends ☐
- b exercise in the afternoon and go to bed at the same time every day ☐
- c exercise in the afternoon and go to bed later at weekends ☐
- d exercise in the evening and go to bed at the same time every day ☐

4 What three things shouldn't teenagers do?

- a drink coffee, turn off the TV, turn down the heating ☐
- b drink coffee, turn off bright lights, close the curtains ☐
- c drink coffee, sleep for more than half an hour in the day, watch horror films ☐
- d drink coffee, read books, give up smoking ☐

5 Why did the writer write this text?

- a to criticise teenagers ☐
- b to describe his sleep routine ☐
- c to give teenagers advice on sleeping ☐
- d to describe teenagers' lives ☐



# 9 Communication

## Vocabulary: Health (2)

- 1 What's the matter with the people?  
Listen and complete the sentences with the words in the box.

~~cough~~ high temperature pain in his arm  
sore throat earache headache toothache  
runny nose

- 1 He's got a cough
- 2 She's got .....
- 3 He's got a .....
- 4 She's got a .....
- 5 He's got a .....
- 6 She's got a .....
- 7 He's got .....
- 8 She's got a .....

## 2 Cross out the words that aren't possible.

- 1 be ~~overweight~~/tired/stress
- 2 drink fruit juice/~~medicine~~/water
- 3 go to bed/~~in hospital~~/to the dentist
- 4 have exercise/~~an x-ray~~/a meal
- 5 stay in bed/~~at home for a day or two~~/to hospital
- 6 take a good diet/~~medicine~~/~~tablets~~/  
cough mixture

## Useful Language

- 3 Replace the underlined words in the dialogue with the words in the box.

matter Big deal that bad  
fed up Cheer up

- A: What's the <sup>matter</sup> 1problem?  
B: I'm 2not very happy.  
A: Why?  
B: I wasn't good enough in the match today. I didn't score.  
A: You weren't 3so awful. The other team were very fast.  
B: Yes, but I usually play well.  
A: 4Try to be happy! We're going skating later.  
B: 5I'm not impressed. I think skating is boring.  
A: Well, don't come if you don't want to!

- 4 Complete the sentences with *too* or *enough* and the adjectives in the box.

### Sentence Builder

~~old~~ ill strong hot  
fast tired

- 1 You're only fifteen. You aren't old enough to get married.
- 2 I've got flu. I'm ..... to go to school.
- 3 It's 40°C. It's ..... to sunbathe.
- 4 She needs to train harder. She isn't ..... to win the race.
- 5 I need to go to bed. I'm ..... to watch TV.
- 6 That box is very heavy. You aren't ..... to lift it.

## Your Turn

- 5 Complete the sentences to make them true for you.

- 1 I'm not old enough to .....
- 2 It's too expensive for me to .....
- 3 It's too cold in the winter in my town to .....
- 4 The weather today isn't good enough to .....
- 5 I'm too busy to ..... today.





# Key Expressions: At the doctor's

6 Complete the dialogue with words from A and B.

A do 've got shouldn't should

B prescription virus headache weather



A: Hello, Annie. Come in and sit down.

B: Thank you.

A: What can I 1 *do* for you?

B: I'm a bit under the 2.

A: What's the matter?

B: I feel tired and I've got a terrible 3 all the time. I've also got a bit of a cough.

A: I think you've got a 4. Here's a 5 for some medicine. You 6 to take it three times a day. And you 7 drink plenty of fruit juice or water.

B: Okay.

A: And it's important to relax, so you 8 play sport or stay up late.

7 Rewrite the sentences with the words in brackets.

1 It's good idea to eat five portions of fruit and vegetables a day. (should)

*You should eat five portions of fruit and vegetables a day.*

2 You have to start exercising. (got)

3 It's bad for you to go to bed late. (shouldn't)

4 It's a good idea to relax before a match. (should)

5 It's isn't a good idea to smoke. (shouldn't)

6 You have to take this medicine every four hours. (got)

## Your Turn

8 Imagine your friend is very fed up. Give him/her some advice.

You: What's the matter?

Friend: I'm really fed up at the moment.

You: Why?

Friend: I'm tired all the time.

You: Well, 1.

Friend: Mm. I'm having problems at school, too. My grades aren't good enough.

You: Don't worry. 2.

Friend: Yes, okay. But that's not at all. I'm not good enough to be in the basketball team.

You: Well, 3.

Friend: Yes, you're right, but we have exams soon and that means stress!

You: 4.

Friend: Thank you but I still have one more problem! I want to buy a CD but it's too expensive.

You: 5. Now, cheer up!

Friend: Okay, thank you. I feel better already.

## Listening

9 Listen to a student at a boarding school talking to the school nurse. Decide if each sentence is correct (C) or incorrect (I).

1 The nurse thinks Andy has an allergy. ☒ C

2 The nurse agrees that Andy should have antibiotics. ☐

3 The nurse tells Andy to relax for a few days. ☐

4 The nurse gives Andy some cough mixture. ☐

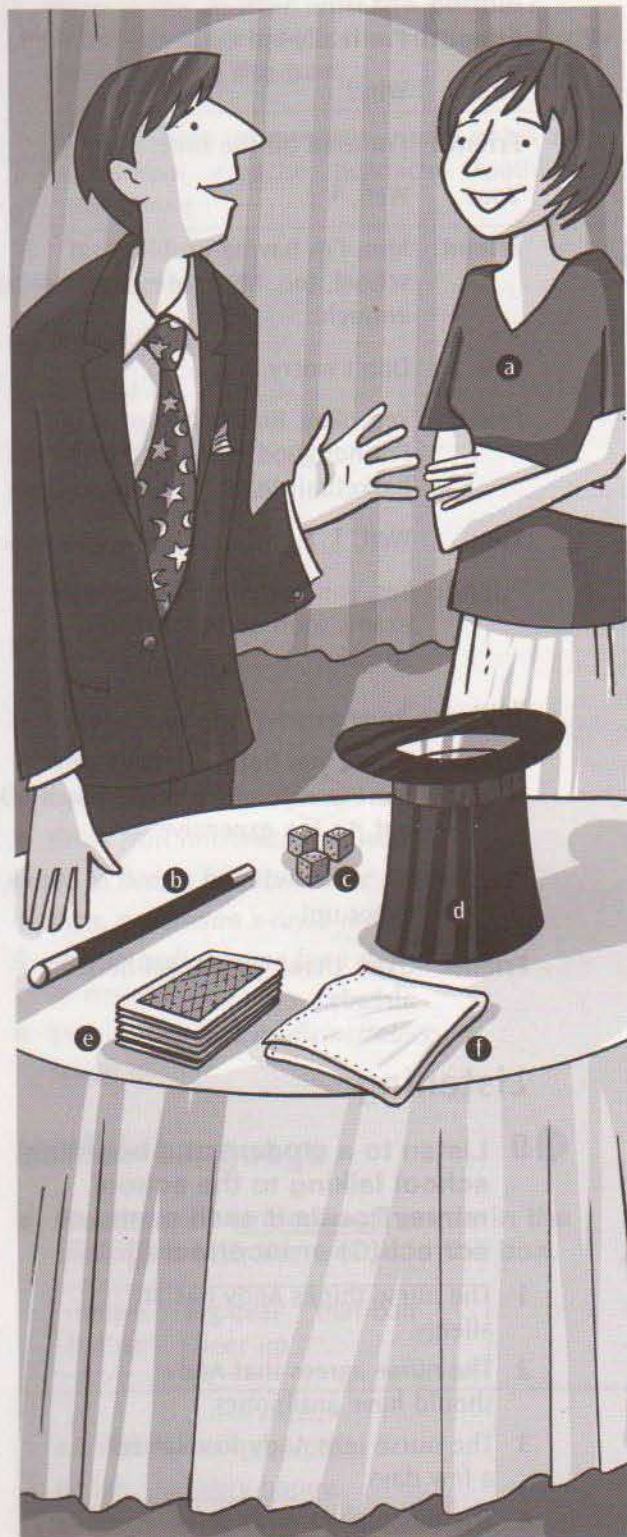
5 The nurse says Andy can play football. ☐

6 At the end the nurse gets a bit angry with Andy. ☐



# Reading Corner 2

1 Match the objects (1–6) with the pictures (a–f).



- 1 pack of cards
- 2 top hat
- 3 wand
- 4 dice
- 5 handkerchief
- 6 volunteer



2 Write the letter of the missing sentences (a–f) in the correct place in the text. There is one sentence that you don't need.

- a He/She shouldn't tell you the final number
- b Ask for a volunteer from the audience
- c Ask the volunteer, 'Am I right?'
- d Give the dice back to the volunteer
- e Calculate the mystery number like this
- f Wait until they stop

## Magic Dice

You will need:

- ★ a piece of clear plastic
- ★ 2 chairs
- ★ 3 dice

This trick is impressive but the 'magic' is really simple maths!

Put the plastic between two chairs. Check that it won't fall. Roll the three dice over the plastic 1.....

Stand on a chair and look down at the dice. 2..... He/She looks under the plastic at the bottom of the dice. From the chair, it is impossible for you to see the bottom faces. The volunteer adds up the spots on the bottom of the dice.

3.....

Close your eyes to show that you are doing magic. 4.....: add the number of spots on the top faces and then subtract the total from 21. For example:

- top faces are 3, 5 and 6 = 14
- $21 - 14 = 7$

Say the mystery number (in this example 7).

5..... Repeat the trick to show that it wasn't just luck.

**Top tip** Don't repeat this trick too often with the same audience. They will guess what you are doing!





### 3 Read the trick and number the pictures in the correct order.

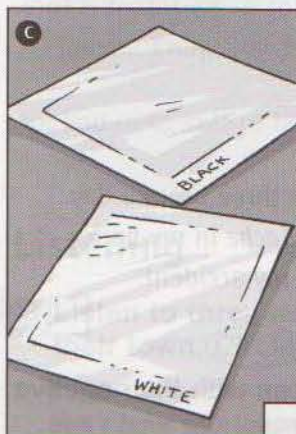
#### Black into White

##### You will need:

- ★ 4 silk handkerchiefs in 2 different colours, e.g. two 2 black and 2 white
- ★ newspaper
- ★ glue
- ★ sticky tape
- ★ your magic wand

- 1 Before the show, put a silk handkerchief on a piece of newspaper. Put glue around the handkerchief (not on it!) and then stick a second piece of paper on top. Repeat this with the handkerchief of the other colour to make two parcels.
- 2 Write the colour of each handkerchief in very small letters on each parcel. You need to remember the colours.
- 3 Put the parcels on a table with your wand and the sticky tape. Show the audience the other two handkerchiefs. Wrap one handkerchief in the parcel with the other colour, e.g. the black handkerchief in the white parcel. Make a ball and hold it with sticky tape. Repeat with the other handkerchief, e.g. the white handkerchief in the black parcel. Make another ball and hold it with sticky tape.
- 4 Choose two people in clothes of the same colour as the handkerchiefs, e.g. black and white. Stand between the two people. Give the hidden black handkerchief to the person in black. Give the hidden white handkerchief to the person in white.
- 5 Ask the people to change places while they are holding their parcels. Wave your wand over each parcel.
- 6 Take the parcel from the person in black. Make a little hole in the paper and pull out the white handkerchief. Take the parcel from the person in white. Make a little hole in the paper and pull out the black handkerchief. And that's magic – black into white!

**Top tip** Don't make a big hole in the paper – you don't want to show the hidden handkerchiefs to the audience!



#### 4 Read the sentences. Which trick did the magician's try?

- 1 I was a disaster! I took out the wrong colour!  
.....
- 2 I wasn't very impressive. I got the maths wrong!  
.....
- 3 It worked very well. Everyone was surprised when they saw red and not blue.  
.....
- 4 The audience thought the volunteer was telling me the answer. ....

#### 5 Answer the questions.

- 1 Have you ever been to a magic show?
- 2 Is there a famous magician in your country?
- 3 What characteristics do you need to be a good magician?



# Language Check 3

## Vocabulary

### 1 Choose the correct words.

Example

I should exercise. I'm a bit overweight / allergic.

- I'm so tired. I'm suffering from stress / insomnia.
- I don't believe in herbal allergies / remedies.
- Footballers often get sports pains / injuries.
- I'm coughing / sneezing a lot so my throat is sore.
- If you use a handkerchief, you won't spread / infect your cold.
- You've got flu so you need to stay / go in bed for a day or two.
- Have / Take your medicine three times a day.
- I've got a really bad pain / ache in my back.
- I had / took an x-ray after my accident.

☐ / 9

### 2 Complete the sentences with the negative form of these adjectives.

healthy patient visible comfortable  
happy fair fit

Example

Your diet is very unhealthy. You should eat more fruit.

- She hates waiting. She's very .....
- Cheer up! Why are you so .....
- My brother gets more pocket money than me. It's so .....
- Bacteria are in the air but they are .....
- My bed is very ..... I need a new one.
- I'm ..... I'm going to start jogging.

☐ / 6

## Grammar

### 3 Correct the underlined mistakes.

Example

My allergy is caused by pollen.

- Antibiotics developed in the 19th century.
- Our local hospital weren't built until 2003.
- Vitamins are find in fruit and vegetables.
- My grandma gives a flu vaccination every winter.
- When have contact lenses developed?
- My yoga classes are given with a Japanese man.

☐ / 6

### 4 Complete the sentences with the Present Simple or Past Simple passive.

Example

Colds are spread (spread) by sneezing.

- Vitamin C ..... (discover) in 1747.
- Toothbrushes ..... (invent) by the Chinese.
- The people ..... (not take) to hospital after the accident.
- A new medical centre ..... (open) in my town last year.
- A lot of remedies ..... (make) from plants.
- I ..... (not give) any medicine at the hospital.
- My teeth ..... (check) twice a year.
- Vaccinations ..... (not develop) until the 18th century.
- I called for an ambulance but it ..... (not need).

☐ / 9

## Key Expressions

### 5 Complete the dialogue with these words.




can should pain should got shouldn't


- A: Hello. What can I do for you?  
 B: I've got a terrible 1 ..... in my leg. I fell over during a football match.  
 A: You 2 ..... have an x-ray at the hospital. You've 3 ..... to take these painkillers now.  
 B: Okay.  
 A: And you 4 ..... play sport or run. You 5 ..... rest your leg as much as possible.  
 B: Thank you very much, doctor.


☐ / 5


## What's your score?

### Module 3

- ☐ Vocabulary   
☐ Grammar   
☐ Key Expressions   
☐ / 35 Total

This is easy. 

I need more practice. 

This is difficult. 

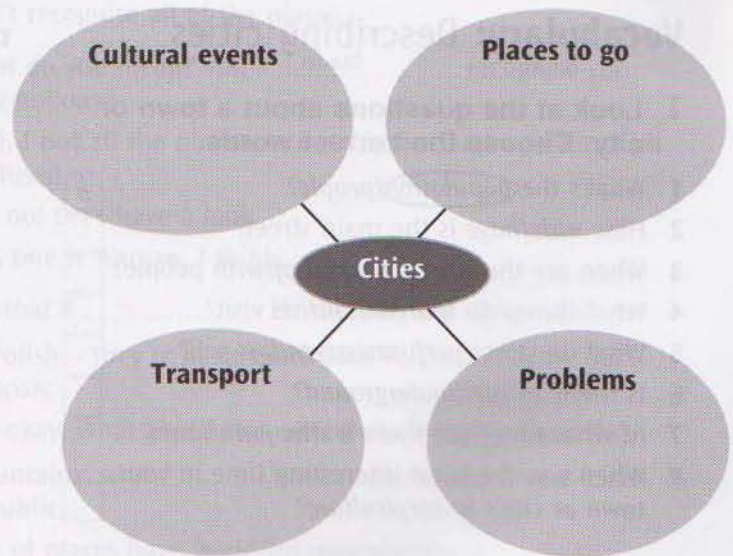


## Get Ready

### Vocabulary: Cities

- 1 Complete the word spider with the words in the box.

bike lanes crime exhibitions free buses  
graffiti Internet cafés litter  
multi-screen cinemas pedestrian areas  
rock concerts shopping malls  
skateboard and bike parks  
traffic pollution vandalism youth clubs



- 2 Complete the speech bubbles with words from Exercise 1.

1 We need more bike lanes in our town. Riding on the road is very dangerous.

2 I love skateboarding and cycling. I use the ..... a lot.

3 There are too many cars on our roads, so the ..... is awful.

4 I buy a lot of thing on the Internet because there aren't any ..... near here.

5 They built some new ..... in the town centre. It's so much better without cars.

6 I live in the capital city and we have a lot of ..... like sports days and music festivals.

### Listening

- 3 Listen to three teenagers talking about their town. Circle the correct information.

- Fiona thinks her town isn't bad. They have don't have sporting and cultural events. There's a music/literature festival. Fiona says a lot of teenagers go to the youth club/park.
- Tim says there are good/good and bad things in his city. It is/isn't easy to travel around. One big problem is traffic pollution/the cost of travel. Someone stole/broke Tim's mobile.
- Philip's town is better/worse than before. It's safe and clean because of bike lanes/pedestrian areas. The town is cleaner/dirtier than before. Philip skates at the shopping mall/skateboard park.

### Your Turn

- 4 Who wrote the lists of suggestions? Match the groups of people (1–4) with the lists (a–d).

- |                |                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 older people | 3 people without cars          |
| 2 teenagers    | 4 people interested in culture |

a Our city needs:  
skateboard and  
bike parks  
pedestrian areas  
bike lanes

c Please give us  
some:  
rock concerts  
shopping malls  
multi-screen cinemas

b We don't have  
enough:  
exhibitions  
street theatres  
music festivals

d we must do  
something about:  
crime  
graffiti  
litter



## Vocabulary: Describing cities

1 Look at the questions about a town or city. Choose the correct words.

- 1 What's the population/people?
- 2 How wide/huge is the main street?
- 3 When are the streets packed of/with people?
- 4 What things do tourism/tourists visit?
- 5 What do street performers/vendors sell?
- 6 Is there an taxi/underground?
- 7 At what times are there traffic jams/lanes?
- 8 When was the most interesting time in your town or city's history/culture?

b

2 Match the questions in Exercise 1 (1–8) to the answers (a–h).

- a No, there isn't, but there's a good bus service.
- b ~~There are about two million people.~~
- c They sell local food and souvenirs.
- d The roads are very busy from 7 to 9 a.m. and from 5 to 7 p.m.
- e It's about 25 metres.
- f The beginning of the 20th century.
- g They go to the main square, the city museum, and the park.
- h There are a lot of people in the town on market day.

## Your Turn

3 Write your own answers to the questions in Exercise 1.

## Grammar: Speculating

→ Grammar Reference, page 113

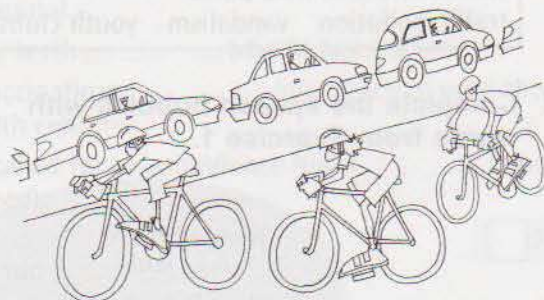
4 Listen to six different sounds. Choose the correct words to complete the sentences.

- 1 That's Spanish music. They could/can't be in the south of Spain.
- 2 That's the sea. They can't/must be on the coast.
- 3 The people are speaking Polish. They could/can't be in Warsaw or Krakow.
- 4 There's a lot of traffic. They must/can't be in the country.
- 5 That was an elephant. They must/can't be in Africa or India.
- 6 The audience isn't very happy. The concert can't/must be very good.

5 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with *must*, *can't* or *could*.



1 It could be spring or summer.



2 There ..... be a lot of traffic pollution.



3 It ..... be very interesting.



4 They ..... be tourists or local people.



5 The food ..... be delicious.



- 6** Read the descriptions of different cities. Write sentences using *could* and *or*, *can't* and *must*.

### How much do you know about cities?

- 1 It's the capital city of a country in Europe. It stands on a famous river. (Paris / London)  
*It could be Paris or London.*
- 2 It's a city in Australia with a famous opera house. (Sydney / New York)  
*It can't be New York. It must be Sydney.*
- 3 It's in South America. It's got a huge square. (Mexico City / Moscow)
- 4 It's the largest city in the world. It isn't in Europe or South America. (Buenos Aires / Tokyo)
- 5 You can travel round the city by water. It attracts a lot of tourists. (Amsterdam / Venice)
- 6 It's got a famous art museum. Thousands of people visit it every year. (Madrid / Paris)
- 7 It's got some beautiful gardens. It isn't in Europe. (Johannesburg / Warsaw)
- 8 It's famous for its cathedral. It has a popular football team. (Barcelona / Milan)

- 7** Complete the dialogue with *must*, *can't* or *could*.

- Nick:** Hi, Sam. I've got the photos of our tour of Europe here but I don't recognise all of the places.
- Sam:** What do you mean? You 1... *must* ... recognise your own holiday.
- Nick:** Well, I put all the photos in one big box and now I'm a bit confused.
- Sam:** Oh, no! Let's have a look.
- Nick:** This one is Warsaw, I think.
- Sam:** No, that 2... be Warsaw. The signs aren't in Polish – they're in Russian. That 3... be Moscow.
- Nick:** Oh, okay. What about this one? It shows some beautiful mountains, so it 4... be Poland or the Czech Republic.
- Sam:** Lots of places have beautiful mountains – it 5... be anywhere! I'll ask my Polish penfriend if she recognises the place.
- Nick:** Okay. Oh, this one is easy. It's Red Square so that 6... be Russia again.
- Sam:** Good. This photo shows a bridge over a river. It 7... be Prague or Budapest.
- Nick:** No, that isn't Budapest. That's Prague Castle so this 8... be the Charles Bridge over the River Vltava.
- Sam:** Yes, I think you're right.

### Your Turn

- 8** Write sentences for these situations. Use the words in brackets.

#### Example

You text your friend at 11 p.m. but there is no answer. (must)  
*He/She must be in bed.*

- 1 You ask your friend to go to the disco with you but he/she says no. (could)
- 2 You send your penfriend an e-mail but he/she doesn't reply. (must)
- 3 You offer your friend a sandwich but he/she says 'No, thanks'. (can't)
- 4 You go to your best friend's house on Saturday afternoon but he/she is not in. (could)
- 5 Your friend doesn't go to school on a Monday morning. (must)

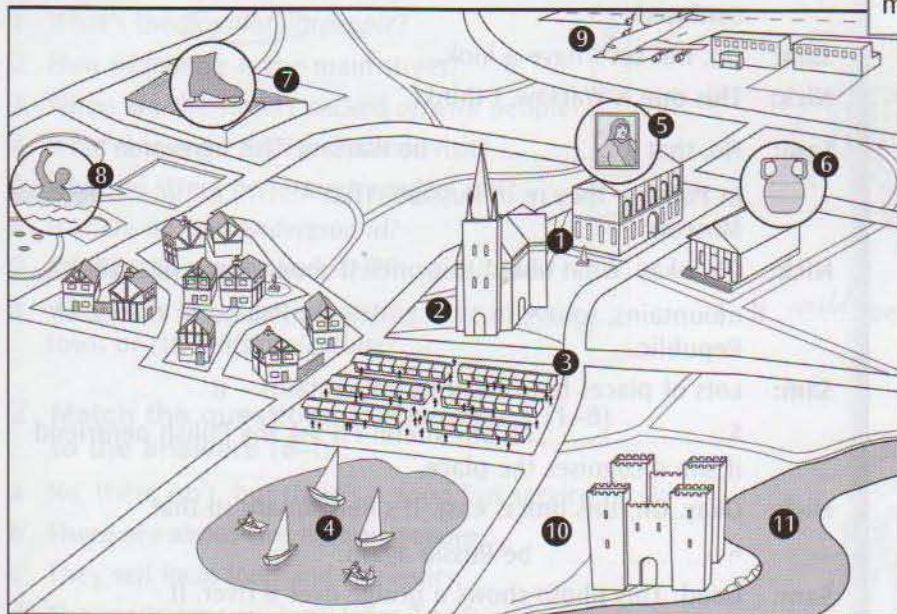


# 11 Skills

## Vocabulary: Places

1 Match the words in the box with the places on the map.

airport aquapark art gallery  
boating lake castle cathedral  
ice rink medieval streets  
museum open-air market river



- 1 *medieval streets*
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....
- 9 .....
- 10 .....
- 11 .....

## Reading

2 Read the texts and choose the correct answer, a, b or c.

1 **NEW AQUAPARK  
OPENING HERE  
END OF AUGUST**

- a The new aquapark is open now.
- b The aquapark is closed in August.
- c The new aquapark will be open in the summer.

2 Hi Angela  
We're going to the new ice rink on Saturday afternoon. Would you like to come? It's very easy to find – you just go behind the open-air market. There's a café at the ice rink too.  
Hope you can come.  
Helen

What is Helen going to do at the weekend?

- a go to a café
- b go skating with her friends
- c go shopping at the open-air market

Dear Mum and Dad  
We're having a really great time here. We went to the castle yesterday and we're going boating this afternoon. I will buy you a present from the open-air market.  
See you next week.  
Amy

Where is Amy going later today?

- a home to see her mum and dad
- b to the lake
- c to the open-air market

4 **Saturday's City Tour**  
There are some changes to the tour:

- We start at 10 a.m. not 11 a.m.
- Please meet me outside the cathedral, not at the castle.

Thank you  
Annie

- a The city tour has to start an hour earlier.
- b There is no city tour on Saturday.
- c The city tour will start at the castle.



5

**NO MORE THAN 3 PEOPLE  
IN EACH BOAT  
DO NOT STAND UP IN THE BOAT**

- a It's safe to stand up in the boat.  
b There have to be three people in each boat.  
c You have to sit down in the boat.

☐  
☐  
☐

6

Tony - 10 p.m.  
Mum and Dad missed the bus from the airport. They're coming home by taxi.  
They will be home at midnight.  
Sue

- a Sue and Tony's parents missed their plane.  
b Sue and Tony's parents won't be home for two hours.  
c Tony has to take a taxi to the airport.

☐  
☐  
☐

3 Choose the best ending for the sentences.

**Word Builder**

- 1 I don't mind visiting museums. They're  
a quite interesting. b very interesting.  
2 I can't stand sightseeing. It's  
a quite boring. b really boring.  
3 My favourite place is the aquapark. It's  
a a bit exciting. b really exciting.  
4 It takes a minute to walk to the city centre. It's  
a very near. b quite near.  
5 I didn't eat much. I was only  
a really hungry. b a bit hungry.  
6 We don't mind ice-skating. It's  
a quite good fun. b really good fun.

5 Choose the correct words.

**Sentence Builder**

- 1 ~~There's~~ It's an open-air market in my town.  
2 There's/It's easy to travel by underground.  
3 There's a new cinema in town. There's/It's really good.  
4 There's/It's a statue in the main square.  
5 There's/It's a new youth club in my village.  
6 There's/It's interesting to visit the old town.  
7 There's a great shopping mall in town. There's/It's huge.  
8 There's/It's a bus to the airport every hour.

**Your Turn**

4 Change the underlined information to make true sentences.

Example *very near my house*  
My school is quite near the station.

- 1 The museums are a bit boring.  
2 The cinema is quite expensive.  
3 I think sightseeing is really interesting.  
4 My town is very near the airport.  
5 The nightlife is really great.  
6 The streets are quite dangerous.

6 Find and correct two mistakes in each pair of sentences.

*There's* *It's*

- 1 ~~It's~~ a beautiful cathedral in my city. ~~Its~~ medieval and lots of people visit it.  
2 There's a fantastic bike park near here. There's really exciting.  
3 Its great to live in a big city. It's a lot to do.  
4 It's a lot of traffic pollution. There's difficult to cycle in the streets.  
5 It's a concert in the main square but I'm not going. Its too cold.  
6 Theirs a new ice rink in town. It great fun.



# 12 Communication

## Useful Language

- 1 Complete the phone message with the words in the box.

there out no away anyway on

Hi, Judy. This is Paul. How is the revision going? 1 *There's* a concert 2 ..... at the sports stadium on Friday. Greg and I are going. Do you want to come, too? We need to get 3 ..... a bit before the exams start. I know the stadium is miles 4 ..... but transport is 5 ..... problem – there's a bus from the city centre. 6 ..... , e-mail me if you want to come and I'll get some tickets. Bye for now.

## Key Expressions: Phone calls

- 2 Choose the correct words.

A: 1 *Hello* Bye. Mrs Clarke? 2 *I'm/It's* Adam. Can I speak 3 *with/to* Rachel, please?  
B: 4 *Hold/Wait* on a moment. I'll see if she's here ... 5 *All right/Sorry*, she's not in at the moment. 6 *Can/Do* I take a message?  
A: Yes, please. Can you ask 7 *him/her* to phone me?  
B: 8 *What's/How's* your number?  
A: 9 *It's/There's* 07802 418937.  
B: 10 *Quite/Just* a moment. 07802 418937.  
A: Okay, 11 *thanks/thanks you*, Mrs Clarke.  
B: Not 12 *a bit/at all*, Adam. Bye.

- 3 Number the lines of the phone call in the correct order.

A: Hi, Rachel. ☒ 1  
B: Sorry, I can't. I'd like to, but I have to revise for the test on Monday. ☐  
A: Great. See you later. ☐  
B: Hi, Adam. I got your message. ☐  
A: Right. Do you want to go to the aquapark with me? ☐  
B: Oh, all right. I'll be there in half an hour. ☐  
A: We can do that together tomorrow. Sunday is always quiet. Come on. You need to have a break. ☐

- 4 Match the phone calls in Exercises 2 and 3 with the pictures. Then answer the questions.



Phone call .....



Phone call .....

- Who is speaker A in phone call 1? Who is speaker B?  
.....
- Who is speaker A in phone call 2? Who is speaker B?  
.....
- Which phone call is more formal?  
.....
- Where could Rachel be in phone call 1?  
.....
- What day must it be in phone call 2?  
.....



## Your Turn

- 5 Imagine you call your older brother at work. Use the expressions in Exercises 2 and 3 and write the phone calls.

### Calling your brother's work

**You:** (Say hello and give your name. Ask to speak to your brother.)  
.....  
.....

**Secretary:** (Asks you to wait. Explains that he's not in the office. Offers to take a message.)  
.....  
.....

**You:** (Say you want your brother to phone you.)  
.....  
.....

**Secretary:** (Asks for the number.)  
.....  
.....

**You:** (Give the number.)  
.....  
.....

**Secretary:** (Asks you to wait then repeats the number.)  
.....  
.....

**You:** (Say thank you and goodbye.)  
.....  
.....

### Your brother calls you

**Brother:** (Says hello and that he received your message.)  
.....  
.....

**You:** (Invite him to a concert.)  
.....  
.....

**Brother:** (Says he would like to but he has to finish a report.)  
.....  
.....

**You:** (Say he can finish the report at the weekend.)  
.....  
.....

**Brother:** (Agrees to go with you.)  
.....  
.....

**You:** (Say you will see him later.)  
.....  
.....

## Listening

- 6 Listen and complete the missing information.

### CITY TOURIST OFFICE

#### Opening hours

**Monday–Friday:** 1 *9 a.m.* to 7 p.m.

**Saturday:** 9 a.m. to 2 ..... **Sunday:** 10 a.m. to 4 p.m.

#### Things to do

**Music festival:** Starts 12th July for 3 .....

Coldplay in concert at the sports stadium on 14th July. Tickets from the stadium, tourist office or website: 4 ..... Free concerts in the main square every afternoon.

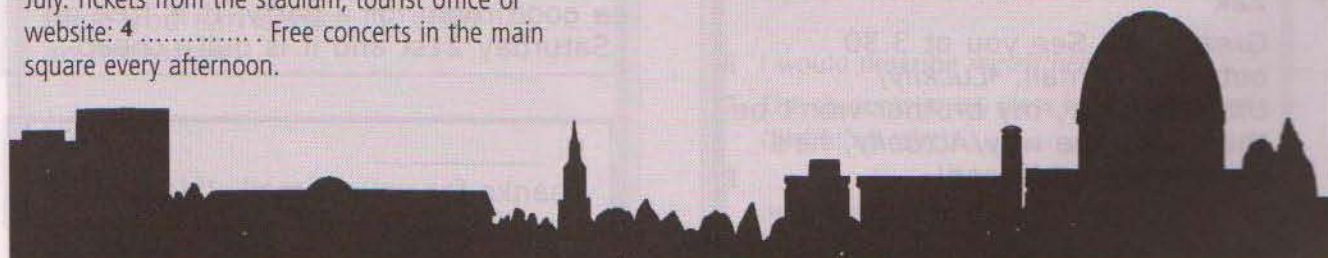
**Ice rink** Show on Saturday 17th and Sunday 18th July at 8 p.m.

Skaters will give a 5 ..... session to young skaters at 4 p.m.

**History Society** Walking tours every 6 ..... in July around the old town.

For more information, contact History Society – phone:

7 ..... and ask for Andrew 8 .....





# Writing Challenge

1 Read the e-mails (1–5). Which one isn't part of the sequence?

1  
Hi Dan  
Some friends and I are going to the new shopping mall at the weekend. It opens on Saturday morning at 9. Do you want to come with us? We could meet there at about 10?  
What do you think? E-mail me later.  
Zak

2  
Zak  
I got your message. I'd love to come, but I can't. I'm playing football on Saturday morning with my brother. He needs me in the team! 1 ~~Anyway~~ *By the way*, let's go to the mall some other day.  
D

3  
Dan  
Did you see the match on TV last night? It was very exciting, wasn't it? What are you doing later? E-mail or phone me.  
Zak

4  
Dan  
We don't have to meet on Saturday morning. The mall is open all day. 2 ~~Unfortunately~~ *Luckily*, I can meet my friends at half past three. Why don't we go then? 3 ~~By the way~~ *Unfortunately*, if your brother wants to come, invite him, too.  
Z

5  
Zak  
Great idea! See you at 3.30 outside the mall. 4 ~~Luckily~~ *Unfortunately*, my brother won't be there. 5 ~~By the way~~ *Actually*, he's meeting his girlfriend!  
D

2 Read the e-mails again. Complete the sentences with the people or places.

- 1 The shopping mall opens at the weekend.
- 2 ..... invites Dan to the shopping mall.
- 3 ..... and his ..... are playing football on Saturday.
- 4 Dan, ..... and his ..... are going to meet on Saturday afternoon.
- 5 Dan's ..... and his ..... won't go to the mall.

3 Choose the correct adverbs (1–5) in the e-mails.

4 What do the underlined words in the e-mails refer to?

E-mail 1: It – the shopping mall, us – ....., there – .....

E-mail 2: He – .....

E-mail 3: It – .....

E-mail 4: Then – ....., him – .....

E-mail 5: there – .....

5 Imagine that you receive this e-mail. Reply using the information in the box.

- Say you would love to go to the party but you are not free on Saturday 14th.
- Suggest another day.
- Suggest a good place for the party.
- Use at least three of these words: *actually*, *anyway*, *by the way*, *luckily*, *unfortunately*.

Hi there  
I'm trying to organise a class party on Saturday 14th at 7 p.m. Are you free then? By the way, do you know a good place for the party? Unfortunately, the disco is too expensive. E-mail me soon.

You are going to the cinema on Saturday 14th, but you are free all day on Saturday 21st. The youth club has a good room for a party. It is free on Saturday 21st and it is quite cheap

Hi .....  
Thanks for your e-mail. I'd love ...



# Understanding Grammar: Personal pronouns

→ Grammar Reference, page 114

## 1 Choose the correct words, a, b, c or d.

- 1 We're going swimming. Come with .....  
a ours    **(b) us**    c our    d we
- 2 Your mobile phone is much nicer than .....  
a my    **b me**    c I    d mine
- 3 This isn't Mum's car. That one is .....  
a her    **b his**    c she    d hers
- 4 This is Jo and Kate. .... from York.  
a They    **b Their**    c He    d Them
- 5 I met your dad last week. I really liked .....  
a it    **b her**    c him    d he

## 2 Correct the underlined mistakes.

*Yours*

- 1 This isn't your jacket. Your is black.
- 2 Dad is going to Paris and I'm going with her.
- 3 Do you like this food? She's from Poland.
- 4 My friends and I really like ours new school.
- 5 Can Leo and Sue use our camera? Their is broken.
- 6 That can't be your sister. Her is taller than you.

## 3 Complete the e-mail with the correct pronouns or possessive adjectives.

Hi Annie

I've just moved to Bristol with my family and <sup>1</sup>we really like it. We've got a new flat and <sup>2</sup>.....'s much bigger than <sup>3</sup>..... old one. I've started at a new school, too.

<sup>4</sup>.....'s got a lot of students but <sup>5</sup>..... are all very friendly. My sister goes to the same school so I see <sup>6</sup>..... at lunch time. <sup>7</sup>..... are in different classes and she gets more homework than <sup>8</sup>..... !

Anyway, how are you and <sup>9</sup>..... family? I hope your brother is okay after <sup>10</sup>..... accident.

I'm sorry I missed your birthday party. <sup>11</sup>..... is next month, so I hope you can come. I'll send <sup>12</sup>..... an invitation.

Love

Katie

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct reflexive pronoun.

- 1 Did you and your friends enjoy yourselfs at the party?
- 2 We introduced ..... to the new neighbours.
- 3 I cut ..... when I was making a sandwich.
- 4 My baby brother and sister can't dress .....
- 5 My radio turns ..... off after it has played for an hour.
- 6 My mum is a designer. She works for .....
- 7 Be careful! The cooker is hot. Don't burn .....
- 8 Did your dad hurt ..... when he fell?

## 5 Choose the correct words.

- 1 The children are very independent. They can look after themselves ~~each other~~.
- 2 My grandparents wrote to themselves ~~each other~~ before they were married.
- 3 You must have a name for your band. What are you going to call yourselfs ~~each other~~?
- 4 We had an argument and we don't speak to ourselves ~~each other~~.
- 5 My friend and I hurt ourselves ~~each other~~ when we fell off our bikes.
- 6 Don't shout in class. You must listen to yourselfs ~~each other~~.

## 6 Cross out the wrong word and then complete the sentences with true information.

Example

I don't enjoy ~~me/myself~~ much at football matches.

- 1 I don't enjoy ~~me/myself~~ much at .....
- 2 My friends and I see each other ~~ourselves~~ .....
- 3 My mum hurt himself ~~herself~~ when she .....
- 4 My friends and I argue with each other ~~ourselves~~ about .....
- 5 My best friend and I met each other ~~ourselves~~ at .....
- 6 I would describe myself ~~herself~~ as .....
- 7 The students in my class help each other ~~themselves~~ when .....
- 8 ..... and I understand each other ~~ourselves~~ very well.



# Language Check 4

## Vocabulary

### 1 Complete the words for the definitions.

Example things to do in a city in the evening  
- night life

- 1 you cycle on this - b \_ \_ \_ l \_ \_ \_
- 2 there are no cars here  
- p \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ a \_ \_ \_
- 3 there are a lot of shops here  
- s \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ m \_ \_ \_
- 4 teenagers go here - y \_ \_ \_ c \_ \_ \_
- 5 a problem from cars and lorries  
- t \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ p \_ \_ \_ \_ \_

☐ / 5

### 2 Complete the sentences with these words.

river airport art gallery ice rink  
castle medieval streets open-air market

Example Let's walk by the river.

- 1 Our flight was late so we had to wait at the .....
- 2 I like skating at the .....
- 3 We bought some food from the vendors in the .....
- 4 Did you like the paintings at the .....?
- 5 I like walking though the ..... to look at the old buildings.
- 6 The ..... was built to defend the city.

☐ / 6

### 3 Choose the correct words:

Example I didn't go because I was bit/a bit tired.

- 1 The film wasn't great but it was quite/very funny.
- 2 The tour wasn't bad but it was a bit/very boring.
- 3 We live quite/very near to the station. You can walk there in two minutes.
- 4 The trip to the aquapark was really/a bit great.

☐ / 4

## Grammar

### 4 Complete the sentences with *must*, *can't*, *could*.

Example She's speaking Portuguese. She could be from Portugal or Brazil.

- 1 You had lunch. You ..... be hungry.
- 2 She's wearing a wedding ring so she ..... be married.

- 3 The traffic pollution is very high. There ..... be a lot of cars.
- 4 Jo isn't at home. He ..... be in town or at the beach.
- 5 She's crying. She ..... be very happy.
- 6 I can't find my keys. They ..... be in my bag or in my jacket.
- 7 He didn't answer. He ..... be at home.
- 8 He ..... be a vet. I'm not sure.
- 9 You went to bed late. You ..... be tired.

☐ / 9

### 5 Choose the correct words.

Example Please come with myself/me.

- 1 That can't be their car. They/Theirs is blue.
- 2 She didn't enjoy herself/himself at the party.
- 3 We write to each other/ourselves every week.
- 4 I can't find my mobile. Can I use you/yours?
- 5 The countries fought each other/themselves.
- 6 We saw ourselves/us in the mirror and couldn't believe our eyes.

☐ / 6

## Key Expressions

### 6 Complete the phone call.

- A: Hello. Can I speak to Mrs Simmons, please?  
I ..... Angela, her daughter.
- B: 2H ..... on a moment. I'll see if she's here. Sorry, she isn't in the office at the moment. Can I take a 3m .....?
- A: Can you ask her to 4p ..... me?
- B: What's your 5n .....?
- A: It's 02291 423891.

☐ / 5

## What's your score?

### Module 4

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Vocabulary      | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Grammar         | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Key Expressions | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> / 35 Total      |                       |

This is easy. 😊

I need more practice. 😐

This is difficult. 😞



## Get Ready

### Vocabulary: Transport

- 1 Complete the sentences with *by* or *on* and the words in the box.

motorbike foot canoe mountain bike  
horseback



- 1 She goes to work *by motorbike*.



- 2 She goes to school .....



- 3 He travels long distances .....



- 4 They cross the river .....



- 5 They go to school .....

- 2 Find seven types of transport and write them next to the correct description.

van metro yacht underground coach lorry tram skis

- You can carry boxes by road in this. *van*
- It a type of bus and it works on electricity. ....
- It's a train but it doesn't go across land. .... / .....
- You can sail on this. ....
- You can move big objects by road in this. ....
- You use these on snow. ....
- It's a type of bus that goes from city to city. ....

- 3 Find the odd one out.

- metro* lorry van mountain bike
- motorbike van lorry canoe
- mountain bike snowmobile helicopter van
- yacht sledge snowmobile skis
- foot tram horseback skis

### Listening

- 4 Listen to three teenagers. Which type of transport are they describing?

- Tom: *paraglider* / helicopter
- Elena: snowmobile / skis
- Max: tram / car

### Your Turn

- 5 Complete the sentences to make them true for you.
- The most popular type of transport in my town/city is .....
  - We don't have ..... in my town/city.
  - I usually got to school by/on .....
  - I think the most dangerous type of transport is .....
  - I'd like to travel by/on .....



# 13 Vocabulary and Grammar

## Vocabulary: Jobs

- 1 Complete the sentences with words for jobs.



- 1 I'm a *fashion model*. I travel to shows in Paris, New York and Milan.
- 2 I'm a f..... I don't go abroad much because I have to look after my animals.
- 3 I spend half the year in Africa studying animals in danger – I'm a Z.....
- 4 I'm a p....., so I travel to the Houses of Parliament in London every week.
- 5 As a f....., I have to travel to a lot to find interesting places for my movies.
- 6 It's important for a p..... to travel – the best pictures can be anywhere in the world.
- 7 I'm a p....., so I don't travel much. I'm usually in my own city fighting crime.
- 8 My boss travels all the time, but I'm a s....., so I'm in the office most of the time.
- 9 I go on holiday but I don't travel for my job. As a w..... I work at my computer at home.
- 10 I sometimes travel abroad to do research. I'm a s....., so I spend most of my time in the laboratory.



## Grammar: Present Perfect

→ Grammar Reference, page 115

- 2 Write the words in brackets in the correct place in the sentences.

- 1 Have you <sup>ever</sup> touched a snake? (ever)
- 2 I have seen the programme. (already)
- 3 We haven't won an award. (yet)
- 4 She has had an accident. (never)
- 5 Have they published the article? (yet)
- 6 Have you raised money for charity. (ever)
- 7 They haven't made a film. (yet)
- 8 She has travelled the world. (already)

- 3 Choose the correct words to the complete the text, a, b, c or d.

### Life in the Wild – Channel 2, 8–9 p.m.

Everyone 1... seen animal programmes on TV, but have you 2... seen an animal documentary with a teenage presenter? *Life in the Wild* is a new series and all the presenters are under twenty years old. They have 3... the world to find the most interesting places and the most fascinating animals. There are eight programmes in the series and I have 4... seen three. The first programme was presented by Kelly from the USA. She is an expert on birds and she has already 5... a film on the peregrine falcon. This animal is in danger and Kelly 6... raised money for its protection. Other presenters in the series have 7... to Africa, Australia and South America. I haven't seen the programme on my favourite animal 8... – the dolphin – that's the last programme in the series. Don't miss the next ...

- |             |           |              |             |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|-------------|
| 1 a have    | b does    | <b>c has</b> | d did       |
| 2 a ever    | b already | c never      | d yet       |
| 3 a go      | b been    | c travel     | d travelled |
| 4 a already | b yet     | c ever       | d never     |
| 5 a do      | b made    | c see        | d make      |
| 6 a has     | b have    | c did        | d is        |
| 7 a go      | b travel  | c being      | d been      |
| 8 a never   | b already | c yet        | d ever      |



- 4 Look at the profiles. Correct the information. Use *already*, *yet* and *never*.

**Name:** Stefan

**From:** Poland

**Interested in:**

wolves and bears

**Published articles?:**

Yes – five.

**Made a wildlife film?:**

Yes – with zoologist  
from the university

**Been on TV? :**

Not yet

**Countries visited:**

the UK, Russia and the Czech Republic



**Name:** Wendy

**From:** Australia

**Interested in:** sharks

**Published articles?:**

Not yet

**Made a wildlife film?:**

Not yet

**Been on TV?:**

Yes – 3 times

**Countries visited:**

the USA, South Africa  
Japan and New Zealand



- 1 Stefan hasn't published any articles.  
Stefan has already published five articles.
- 2 He has already appeared on TV.  
He ..... on TV .....
- 3 He hasn't made a film yet.  
He ..... a film.
- 4 He has visited South Africa.  
He ..... South Africa.
- 5 Wendy has already published some articles.  
Wendy ..... any articles .....
- 6 She has already made a wildlife film.  
She ..... a wildlife film.
- 7 She has never been on TV.  
She ..... three times.
- 8 She has visited Europe.  
She ..... Europe.

- 5 Complete the dialogue with the Present Perfect of the verbs in brackets. Put *already*, *yet*, *ever*, *never* in the correct place.

**Teacher:** Okay, everyone. I've got some news about the youth club expedition. We're going dolphin watching in Scotland. 1. Have ..... you ever been to Scotland? (ever / be)

**Harry:** I 2. .... (visit) York but I 3. .... (never / be) to Scotland.

**Emma:** I 4. .... (already / see) dolphins a few times but I'd like to go on the trip. They're such interesting animals.

**Mark:** I think so, too.

**Teacher:** Okay, well, we 5. .... (decide) the location and the dates but we 6. .... the activities ..... (not choose / yet). You can go sailing, canoeing and take trips on horseback.

**Tina:** I 7. .... (never / try) canoeing. I'm going to choose that.

**Lisa:** 8. .... you ..... a hotel ..... (book / yet)?

**Teacher:** We aren't going to stay in a hotel. We're going to go camping.

**Lisa:** Camping in Scotland! It will be freezing!

### Your Turn

- 6 Write questions with *ever*. Then write true answers.

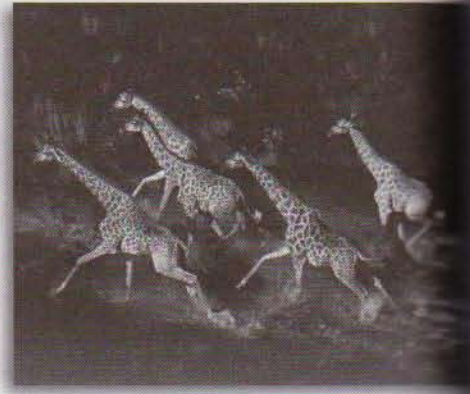
- 1 your mum / ride a motorbike?  
Has your mum ever ridden a motorbike? .....
- 2 you / see a snake in the wild?  
.....
- 3 your class / travel abroad?  
.....
- 4 your grandparents / travel by helicopter?  
.....
- 5 your best friend / try skiing?  
.....
- 6 you / win a holiday?  
.....
- 7 you and your friends / be on a yacht?  
.....
- 8 you / have an accident on a trip?  
.....



## Vocabulary: Animals

### 1 Match the descriptions with the animals.

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 They're African animals with horns.   | a python                      |
| 2 They're from Australia.               | b giraffe                     |
| 3 They're part of the cat family.       | c zebra                       |
| 4 It's found in the Arctic.             | d tiger, cheetah and leopard  |
| 5 It's found in China.                  | e polar bear                  |
| 6 They're big land animals from Africa. | f antelope and wildebeest/gnu |
| 7 It's a type of snake.                 | g baboon                      |
| 8 It's a type of wild dog.              | h buffalo, rhino and hippo    |
| 9 It's a large monkey from Africa.      | i hyena                       |
| 10 It's a very tall African animal.     | j kangaroo and koala          |
| 11 It's got black and white stripes.    | k panda                       |



## Reading

### 2 Read about the people (1-4) and the trips (a-f). Decide which trip would be most suitable for each person.

- 1 Joe wants to go on a trip before he starts university. He's interested in helping people, *but he isn't very interested in animals*. He doesn't like water sports. ☐
- 2 Angela and her husband want to take their teenage children somewhere different. They all enjoy walking and they want to learn about a different culture. The children are interested in animals. ☐
- 3 Carol wants a trip that will show her different places. She doesn't want to work during her holiday but she is keen to meet local people. ☐
- 4 David wants to take his family on holiday. They have already been on safari in Africa, so they want to see a different culture. His children prefer holidays in cities and his wife is interested in history. ☐

#### a Japan – something for everyone

Japan is a fascinating country with modern cities and traditional culture. This trip offers fun for teenagers in Japan's hi-tech capital, Tokyo. There are also shopping opportunities for people of all ages. The whole family can enjoy the wonderful scenery of Mount Fuji. The historic city of Kyoto offers gardens, temples and traditional ceremonies.

#### b Costa Rica Adventure

Travel along the Caribbean coast and enjoy wonderful scenery from clean beaches to tropical rainforests. This tour shows you the secrets of the rainforest, and the lives and traditions of the local people. See a wide range of wildlife, try canoeing on the Pacuare River and watch the active Arenal Volcano.

#### c Saving the Beaches of the Bahamas

Have a great family holiday and also help to save the beaches and reefs of the Bahamas from pollution. Working with scientists, you will do tests to check the water, the wildlife and local plants. There are also lots of opportunities to go biking, snorkelling or sailing.

#### d Swimming with whales

Every winter, the spectacular humpback whales move from the icy seas of the Antarctic to the waters of the islands of Tonga. Join us for a fantastic opportunity to be near these animals in beautiful, clear water. Hear their incredible 'singing' as you snorkel quietly next to them in the water.

#### e Experience the real Kenya

Stay with a family in a village for a real experience of life in Kenya. We organise lessons in the local language. The village leader will also give you information on local history and culture. On most days, you will help your host family with their work. You will also have the opportunity to see the country's spectacular national parks.

#### f Trekking for families in Nepal

This trek in the hills below the Himalayas is perfect for families. We spend time in traditional Hindu villages and join the villagers for dancing, singing and games of volleyball and cricket. There is also time to visit local schools and markets to learn about everyday life. After our trek, we travel to the Chitwan National Park and ride on elephants to look for rhinos and tigers.



- 3 Which trip in Exercise 2 would you choose? Which one wouldn't you like to go on?
- 4 Match the words from A and B and complete the sentences. Remember to write your answers with a hyphen.

## Word Builder

A action- air- English- five- hard-  
good- well-

B known looking conditioned working  
star packed speaking

- We went on an action-packed adventure holiday.
- We always stay at campsites. I've never stayed in a ..... hotel.
- The staff at the lodge were very ..... and they helped us a lot.
- It was very hot so we were pleased that the room was .....
- My sister thought our guide was very ..... and she took lots of photos of him.
- Everyone stopped to speak to the tour guides. They were very ..... in the city.
- Our ..... guides can answer your questions on local history and culture.

- 5 Choose two of the three words in brackets to complete the sentences. Write your answers as one or two words.

- Have you ever visited a rainforest ? (trees / rain / forest)
- We toured the city by ..... (bike / mountain / cycle)
- Austin Stevens is a ..... (film / cinema / maker)
- We put up our tent at the ..... (site / park / camp)
- I enjoy travelling around the countryside on ..... (ride / back / horse)
- Many ..... go on adventure holidays. (packers / back / trekkers)
- It was fascinating to see ..... in the Arctic. (bears / polar / ice)
- What ..... do we need to buy? (equipment / camping / camp)

- 6 Rearrange the words to make sentences. Add capital letters and punctuation.

## Sentence Builder

- by we travelling plane love  
*We love travelling by plane.*
- boring is birdwatching really
- sunbathing you do like
- visiting stand we can't museums
- sightseeing enjoy your do friends
- is good sightseeing fun
- with travelling family like he doesn't his
- very isn't backpacking relaxing

## Your Turn

- 7 Change the underlined information to make true sentences.



- I love sightseeing in cities.
- Going on holiday with friends is cool.
- Paragliding is dangerous.
- My friends and I can't stand staying on campsites.
- Visiting castles is boring.
- My family likes travelling abroad.
- Going on school trips is great.
- I don't like birdwatching.



# 15 Communication

## Key Expressions: Asking for information

### 1 Choose the correct words.



**Rachel:** <sup>1</sup>~~Excuse~~/Pardon me? <sup>2</sup>~~Do~~/Could you give us some information, please?

**Guide:** Of course.

**Rachel:** What <sup>3</sup>~~is there~~/have you to do in Cardiff?

**Guide:** Well, there's a castle in the city centre.

**Rachel:** Mm. That <sup>4</sup>~~sounds~~/looks a bit boring.

**Daniel:** What <sup>5</sup>~~other~~/else is there?

**Guide:** Okay, well we've also got the Millennium Stadium here. They play rugby matches and pop concerts there. You can do a tour if you like.

**Rachel:** Mm, maybe.

**Guide:** Well, there's a science centre called Techniquet.

**Daniel:** <sup>6</sup>~~What's~~/How's it like? I've never heard of it.

**Guide:** It's a discovery centre with 160 interactive displays. You can race an electric car, fire a rocket and play a giant keyboard.

**Rachel:** That <sup>7</sup>~~sound~~/sounds cool. How much <sup>8</sup>~~is~~/does it cost?

**Guide:** It's £4.80 for children aged four to sixteen.

**Daniel:** That sounds <sup>9</sup>~~comfortable~~/reasonable. How do you <sup>10</sup>~~go~~/get there?

**Guide:** Techniquet is at Cardiff Bay. Get a number 8 bus from the Central Bus Station.

**Rachel:** Where do we get <sup>11</sup>~~down~~/off the bus?

**Guide:** In Stuart Street near the car park.

**Daniel:** Thanks a lot for your help.

**Guide:** <sup>12</sup>~~Nothing~~/Not at all.

## Your Turn

### 2 Imagine that an English-speaking friend is visiting your town/city. Complete the dialogue.

**Friend:** What is there to do in the city centre?

**You:** .....

**Friend:** Sorry, that sounds a bit boring. What else is there?

**You:** .....

**Friend:** That sounds cool. How much does it cost?

**You:** .....

**Friend:** That sounds okay. How do I get there?

**You:** .....

**Friend:** Where do I get off the bus?

**You:** .....

**Friend:** That's great, thanks. See you later.

### 3 Complete the sentences with *looks* or *sounds* and the words in the box.

#### Sentence Builder

difficult   awful   adventurous   big  
delicious   good fun

1 **A:** Look at this maths homework. There are 100 questions!

**B:** That *looks difficult*.

2 **A:** I had a great birthday. We went skating and then to a burger bar.

**B:** That .....

3 **A:** I've made a pizza. Would you like some?

**B:** It .....

4 **A:** Do you like my new top?

**B:** It ..... a bit ..... for you. What size is it?

5 **A:** She fell off her bike and she broke her arm and her leg.

**B:** That .....

6 **A:** My brother is going to backpack around the world and trek in the Himalayas.

**B:** He ..... very .....



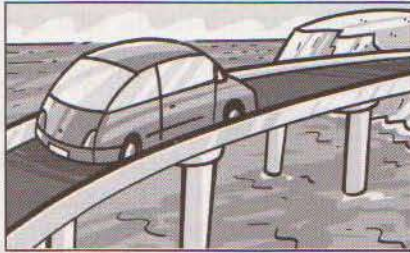
## Listening

4 Listen to five short recordings. Choose the correct picture, a, b or c.

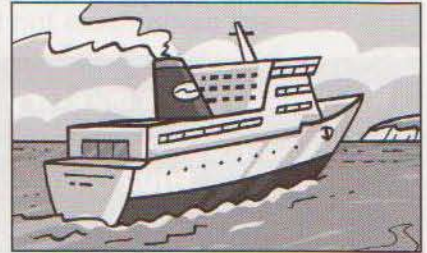
1 How can people travel to Angel Island?



a ☐

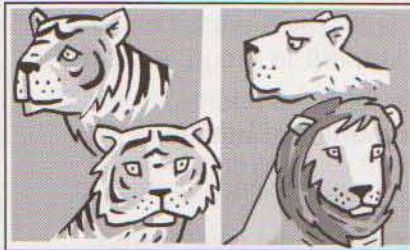


b ☒

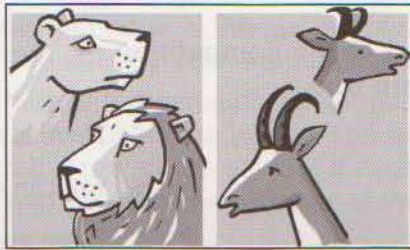


c ☐

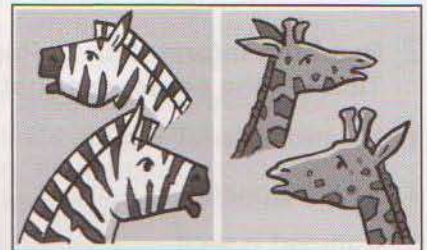
2 What animals did the boy see?



a ☐

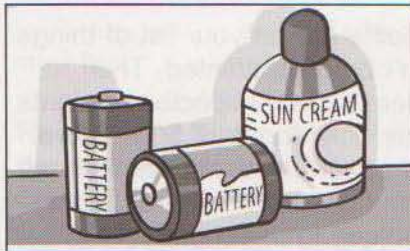


b ☐

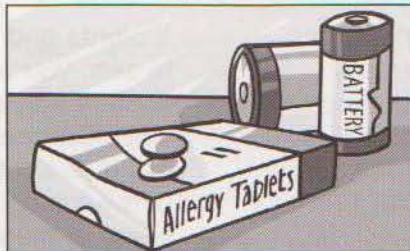


c ☐

3 What has the woman already bought for the holiday?



a ☐

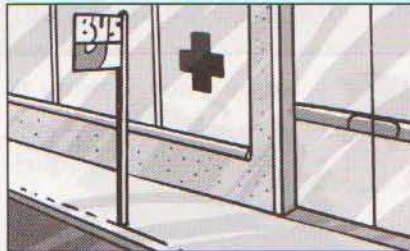


b ☐

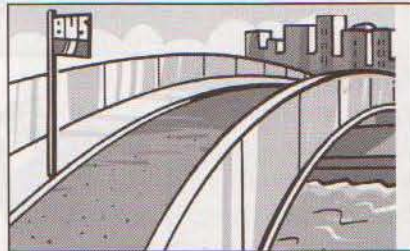


c ☐

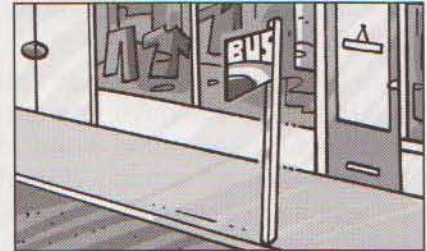
4 Where does the girl have to get off the bus?



a ☐



b ☐

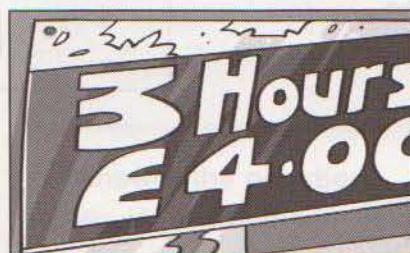


c ☐

5 Which is the correct information for the bus tour?



a ☐



b ☐



c ☐



# Reading Corner 3

## Where in the world?

### 1 Look at the competition. Choose the correct words.

#### Win a holiday to a mystery destination

Enter our competition and win a holiday for  
**FOUR** people

including flights, accommodation and  
£500 spending for each person

Visit [www.mysterytrip.com](http://www.mysterytrip.com) to see Part 1 of the competition

The winner <sup>1</sup>*knows/doesn't know* where he/she will go on holiday. The winner can take <sup>2</sup>*three/four* people on the trip. They <sup>3</sup>*have to/don't have to* pay for the hotel. They will have a total of <sup>4</sup>*£500/£2,000* to spend. They enter the competition <sup>5</sup>*in a magazine/on the Internet*.

### 2 Read the information in Part 1 of the competition.

Tick (✓) the sentences that are true.

1 The people speak English.

☐

2 It's a big country.

☐

3 Transport is good.

☐

4 There isn't much to do in the evenings.

☐

5 There is a big variety of wildlife.

☐

6 You can do adventure sports there.

☐

7 There are some very old cities to visit.

☐

#### Part 1

This is a huge country, about 50% larger than Europe, and it is full of contrasts.

There are modern cities full of sporting and cultural events and exciting nightlife. There is also amazing scenery including beaches, mountains, rainforests and deserts.

There's always plenty to do. If you're into water sports, the country's lakes, rivers and beaches are perfect for swimming, sailing, surfing and diving. If you don't mind heights, why not try a balloon ride, helicopter flight or even a bungee jump?

You won't find medieval streets to walk around, but the cities still have interesting contemporary architecture and some wonderful museums and art galleries. Art produced by the indigenous people has become very popular in the last thirty years.

If plants and wildlife are on your list of things to see, you won't be disappointed. This country has at least 25,000 species of plants while Europe has only about 17,500. There are also a lot of opportunities for animal and birdwatching with hundred of different species, many of them unique to the country.

Several languages are spoken but English is the official language. The local people are very friendly, so it's a good place to practise your language skills.



### 3 Think about the mystery destination. Choose the correct words. Where do you think it might be?

1 It *can't/could* be in Europe.

2 It *can't/could* be in Africa.

3 It *can't/could* be in South America.

4 It *can't/could* be in North America.



## 4 Read the text in Part 2 of the competition. Complete the sentence.

### Part 2

- Before I arrived here, I knew a little about the big cities, but not much about the country itself. It's actually the sixth largest country in the world. The weather and scenery changes from region to region. They have more than 3,000 hours of sunshine a year here, but I've been skiing in the south-east of the country in winter.
- Coming from Europe, I miss the very old cities and buildings, but the history and culture are still very interesting here. The native people represent one of the oldest cultures in the world. They have always had a great respect for the environment and they have produced art with close links to the land.
- Although it isn't the capital, I really like this city. My favourite landmark is the famous bridge. It takes ten years and 30,000 litres of paint to cover it and the painting never stops! You can also climb the bridge to get an incredible view of the harbour. I haven't done it yet. Just near the bridge is the opera house with its incredible design. It's the 'home of the arts' – I've already seen some plays and concerts there.
- The strangest thing for me here is the seasons. Christmas happens in the middle of the summer here and June to August is the winter! The animals are a bit crazy, too. There is nothing like them in the rest of the world. Of course, the kangaroo and the koala are national symbols and you see the pictures of the kangaroo everywhere.

The mystery country must be ..... and the city must be .....

### 5 Read Part 2 again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 The writer knew a lot about the country before he arrived there. F
- 2 There are only four countries in the world that are larger.
- 3 It snows in some areas.
- 4 The writer is from a European country.
- 5 The native people have lived in the country for a long time.
- 6 The writer has climbed the bridge.
- 7 The opera house offers different cultural events.
- 8 The writer thinks it's strange to celebrate Christmas in hot weather.

## 6 Work out the words in code in Part 3 of the competition.

### Part 3

This is the final part of the competition. Can you work out the code and win the fantastic trip?

Need a little help? A = 1, Z = 26

Flight to destination You fly to the capital city, <sup>1</sup>3/1/14/2/5/18/18/1 Canberra, to start your adventure

#### Day 1

Spend a day at

<sup>2</sup>17/21/5/19/20/1/3/15/14

....., the National Science and Technology Centre

#### Day 2

Hire a bike and cycle round some of the 120km of bicycle lanes and enjoy the scenery. Or why not try walking though the Tidbinbilla Nature Reserve and see <sup>3</sup>11/1/14/7/1/18/15/15/19

....., koalas and birds?

#### Day 3

Free to enjoy the city

#### Day 4

Travel to <sup>4</sup>13/5/12/2/15/21/18/14/5 .....

#### Day 5

See the world's best players at the Open <sup>5</sup>20/5/14/14/9/19 ..... Championships

#### Day 6

Visit the city's shopping malls

#### Days 7/8

Free to go <sup>6</sup>19/9/7/8/20/19/5/5/9/14/7 ..... in the city. Take a walk along the wide <sup>7</sup>25/1/18/18/1 ..... River and enjoy some good food in the many cafés and restaurants.

#### Day 9

Travel to Sydney

#### Day 10

Enjoy the beaches around Sydney <sup>8</sup>8/1/18/2/15/21/18 .....

Flight home from Sydney Airport

## 7 Answer the questions.

- 1 Would you like to win the competition? Why/Why not?
- 2 Where's your ideal holiday destination? Why?
- 3 Have you ever won a competition? What did you win?



# Language Check 5

## Vocabulary

### 1 Complete the types of transport.

Example

It flies but it isn't a plane. *helicopter*

- 1 Another word for metro. u \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 You travel on this in cold places.  
s \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 You cycle on this. m \_\_\_\_\_ b \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You can go riding on this. h \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 You need a helmet to ride this.  
m \_\_\_\_\_

☐ / 5

### 2 Write the correct job for each verb.

Example grow food – *farmer*

- 1 do experiments – \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 work in politics – \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 prevent crime – \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 wear beautiful clothes – \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 make movies – \_\_\_\_\_

☐ / 5

### 3 Match 1–6 with a–f.

- |           |                            |               |
|-----------|----------------------------|---------------|
| 1 air-    | <input type="checkbox"/> c | a life        |
| 2 sight   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b hotel       |
| 3 night   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c conditioned |
| 4 luxury  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d working     |
| 5 camping | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e seeing      |
| 6 hard-   | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f equipment   |

☐ / 5

## Grammar

### 4 Choose the correct words.

Example Have you finished yet/*ever*?

- A: Have you <sup>1</sup>*ever*/*yet* tried skiing?  
 B: Yes, I have and I've also <sup>2</sup>*be*/*been* canoeing.  
 A: <sup>3</sup>*Have*/*Has* Mum booked the holiday yet?  
 B: Yes, she's <sup>4</sup>*already*/*ever* booked the flights.  
 A: We love visiting different countries.  
 B: Really? We've <sup>5</sup>*never*/*ever* been abroad.  
 A: My parents have <sup>6</sup>*travel*/*travelled* the world.  
 B: Have they <sup>7</sup>*ever*/*yet* been on safari?  
 A: Yes, and they've <sup>8</sup>*seen*/*saw* lots of animals.

☐ / 8

### 5 Write sentences in the Present Perfect.

Example I / never / travel abroad  
*I've never travelled abroad.*

- 1 they / ever / see animals in the wild?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I / never / touch a snake  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Ann / already / leave for the airport  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 you / find your passport / yet?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 you / not show me / your photos / yet  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 your teacher / ever / try jet skiing?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 we / already / decide where to go  
 \_\_\_\_\_

☐ / 7

## Key Expressions

### 6 Complete the dialogue with these words.

Excuse get cost off sounds Could

- A: *Excuse* me? 1..... you give me some information, please.  
 B: Of course.  
 A: What is there to do here?  
 B: There's a boating lake.  
 A: That 2..... fun. How much does it 3.....?  
 B: Three pounds for half an hour.  
 A: Okay. How do you 4..... there?  
 B: Get a number 10 bus and get 5..... by the park.

☐ / 5

### What's your score?

#### Module 5

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Vocabulary      | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Grammar         | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Key Expressions | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> / 35 Total      |                       |

This is easy. 😊

I need more practice. 😐

This is difficult. 😞



## Get Ready

### Vocabulary: Films

#### 1 Complete the names of the types of films.

- 1 an exciting story with lots of special effects – an *action* film
- 2 two young people travel across the desert – an a..... film
- 3 two countries fight – a w..... film
- 4 two people fall in love – a r..... film
- 5 a gang rob a bank – a c..... film
- 6 a mermaid comes to live in a city – a f..... film
- 7 a ghost haunts a house – a h..... film
- 8 the story of a king from the sixteenth century – a h..... film
- 9 a man tries to find out the secrets of another country – a s..... film

#### 2 Complete the film information with the words in the box.

animation comedy costume drama  
musical thriller western

#### Space Race

If you like special effects, this is the film for you. A really exciting science fiction 1. *thriller* with a surprise ending ...

#### The Texan

If you like cowboy films, you will love this 2. ....! Filmed in Texas and Mexico, it's a real adventure.

#### You Must Be Joking! 2

There's a laugh a minute in this British 3. .... It's the sequel to the successful first film and it's just as good.

#### The Sounds of the Street

All your favourite pop songs are in this American 4. .... and the dancing is incredible.

#### QT – The Friendly Monster

This children's cartoon is lots of fun for all the family. The 5. .... is brilliant and the story is full of amazing characters.

#### The Young Prince

This is a fantastic 6. .... from 18th-century Europe. It tells the story of an ordinary boy who becomes a prince.

## Listening

### 3 Listen and choose the correct pictures.

#### 1 Which is Judy's favourite film?



a ☐

b ☒

#### 2 Which film has Tony seen recently?



a ☐

b ☐

#### 3 Which is Carol's favourite part of the film?



a ☐

b ☐

## Your Turn

### 4 Complete the film survey.

#### Tell us about your favourite films!

Favourite actor:

Favourite actress:

Favourite director:

Please number these types of film in order of preference (1 = favourite).

animation ☐ comedy ☐ costume  
drama ☐ musical ☐ action ☐  
science-fiction/fantasy ☐



## Vocabulary: Action films

- 1 Replace the underlined words with the words in the box.

secret agent plot crash  
explode awards military base  
play kill himself

- There's a bomb! The building is going explode to blow up!
- In action films there is often a car race and the drivers have an accident.
- I enjoyed the story of the last Bond film.
- James Bond is my favourite spy.
- I don't think a woman could be Bond.
- In action movies the hero is always in danger but he doesn't die.
- Bond finds a bomb in the army station.
- Do you think the new Bond film will win some prizes?

## Grammar: Predictions

→ Grammar Reference, page 116

- 2 Choose the correct words.

- The new Bond film is great. I hope it will/won't win an Oscar.
- I might to be/be an actress one day.
- I love Bond films. I will/might certainly go to see the next one.
- I didn't enjoy *Superman I*, so I probably might/won't see the sequel.
- The Lord of the Rings* is quite scary, so young children won't/may not like it.
- The plot of *The Matrix* is amazing. I'm sure you may/will enjoy it.

- 3 Complete the sentences with the pairs of verbs.

might / go won't / make  
will / enjoy may / buy will / be

- I'm not sure about Saturday. I might go to the cinema.
- The first film was terrible so I don't think the sequel ..... very good.
- Johnny Depp is my favourite actor. He ..... ever ..... a bad film!
- I enjoyed the film. I ..... the DVD.
- This is a great action film. I'm sure you ..... it.

- 4 Rewrite the sentences with the words in brackets.

- Perhaps I'll join a drama club. (might)  
I might join a drama club
- Perhaps the sequel will be better than the first film. (may)
- Perhaps the film will win an award. (might)
- Perhaps there will be a sequel. (may)
- Perhaps spy films will become more popular than action films. (might)
- Perhaps our local cinema will close. (may)

- 5 Choose the correct words to complete the text, a, b, c or d.



Alex Rider is a secret 1... with special skills and talents, but with a difference – this spy is only fourteen years old. Alex is the hero of a new 2... film called *Stormbreaker*. Teenage actor Alex Pettyfer 3... Alex Rider in the film. Fifteen-year-old Alex was chosen from 500 other young actors for the part. Alex said, 'This 4... going to be a great experience for me. Alex Rider is an amazing character with an incredible life.'

*Stormbreaker* is full of other stars like Ewan McGregor and Mickey Rourke. The 5... of the film is also very exciting. I'm sure that people of all ages 6... like it. Perhaps Alex Rider 7... become more popular than James Bond one day ...

- |             |                |           |           |
|-------------|----------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 a agents  | <b>b agent</b> | c agency  | d spy     |
| 2 a actor   | b active       | c acting  | d action  |
| 3 a plays   | b makes        | c acts    | d appears |
| 4 a be      | b will         | c is      | d may     |
| 5 a stories | b plot         | c history | d plan    |
| 6 a will    | b might        | c going   | d won't   |
| 7 a is      | b won't        | c going   | d may     |



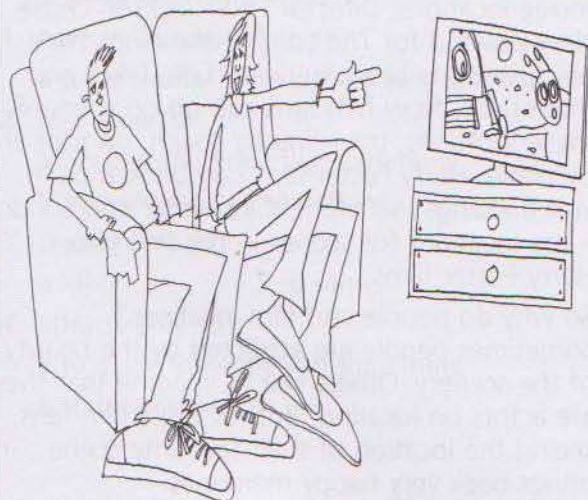
- 6 What is going to happen next? Write sentences about the people with **be going to** and the verbs in the box.

get into crash jump out of give  
explode put on drop shoot

- 1 Johnny is going to get into his sports car.
- 2 He ..... his mobile phone.
- 3 His girlfriend ..... her make-up.
- 4 The soldiers ..... the helicopter.
- 5 The cars .....
- 6 The enemy agents ..... Johnny.
- 7 The bomb .....
- 8 The director ..... the actors some instructions.

- 7 Correct the underlined mistakes in the dialogue. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- will*  
Fiona: What do you think 1won't happen at the end of the film?  
Chris: I'm not sure. The astronauts 2will escape from the planet or the aliens might catch them.  
Fiona: I think Captain Solar 3might probably escape.  
Chris: I'm not so sure. Look! The alien has got a gun. He 4will kill Captain Solar.  
Fiona: No, there's the robot X1 – he 5going to save the captain.  
Chris: That was lucky! What's happening now?  
Fiona: The astronauts 6is going to get into their spaceship. I hope they 7won't escape in time.  
Chris: Oh, no! Some aliens are hiding on the ship. What's 8going happen now?



## Your Turn

- 8 Write true sentences with **will/won't, may/might, be going to**.

Example

become an actor

I probably won't become an actor.

- 1 my best friend / become an actor  
.....
- 2 my friends and I / go to the cinema at the weekend  
.....
- 3 they / build a multi-screen cinema in my town  
.....
- 4 I / buy a DVD tomorrow  
.....
- 5 I / meet my favourite actor one day  
.....
- 6 I / visit my cousins next month  
.....



## Vocabulary: People and films

### 1 Match the words and phrases to the definitions.

- |                   |   |
|-------------------|---|
| 1 producer        | a to change something so that you can use it in a different situation           |
| 2 audience        | b the person who gives actors instructions                                      |
| 3 scene           | c a part of a film or play in which the action happens in one place             |
| 4 editor          | d to move to the part of a DVD you want to see without watching the whole thing |
| 5 director        | e the person who decides what to keep in a film and checks for mistakes         |
| 6 to be set in    | f the people who watch a film or a play   |
| 7 to fast forward | g to show the action of a film in a particular time and place                   |
| 8 to adapt        | h the person who organises the business side of a film                          |

## Reading

### 2 Where are these films set? Match the films to the locations.

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 <i>The Lord of the Rings</i>      | a London and Paris              |
| 2 <i>Schindler's List</i>           | b Hawaii, London and Iceland    |
| 3 Two of the <i>Star Wars</i> films | c Krakow                        |
| 4 <i>Die Another Day</i>            | d Oxford, Gloucester and London |
| 5 The Harry Potter films            | e Tunisia                       |
| 6 <i>The Da Vinci Code</i>          | f New Zealand                   |

### 3 Read the text quickly and check your answers to Exercise 2.

## Location, Location

What do these places have in common: Temple Church in London, the Louvre Museum in Paris, the deserts of Tunisia and Krakow in Poland? They are all locations for successful films.

- 5 Some of the scenes in *The Da Vinci Code* are set in Temple Church in London and in the Louvre Museum in Paris. The deserts of Tunisia were used in two of the *Star Wars* films, and *Schindler's List* was made in Krakow.
- 10 Film fans often visit the location of their favourite films. This has created a new form of travel called 'movie tourism'. Certain cities are capitals of movie tourism. For example, New York is used in hundreds of new films every year and it attracts movie fans from all over the world. London is also a very popular location for films including romantic comedies and action films. *Brigit Jones's Diary* was filmed in London. The James Bond film *Die Another Day* also has
- 15 scenes in London, as well as Hawaii and Iceland!



Some travel agencies offer organised tours to movie locations. Director Peter Jackson chose New Zealand for *The Lord of the Rings* films because of its beautiful waterfalls, lakes and

- 25 mountains. Now film fans can go on tours of these locations, travelling by coach, on foot and by plane. Harry Potter fans can book trips to visit buildings in Oxford, Gloucester and London – the locations for scenes in the first two
- 30 Harry Potter films.

So why do people visit film locations? Sometimes people are attracted by the beauty of the scenery. Others like to imagine that they are actors on location. But for most film fans, seeing the location of their favourite scene brings back very happy memories.

Which film location would you like to go to?



**4 Read the text again. Choose the correct answers, a, b, c or d.**

- 1 What is the link between the places mentioned in the text?
  - a They have beautiful scenery.
  - b They have a lot of visitors.
  - c Scenes from popular films were made there.
  - d Film directors like them.
- 2 Why are some cities movie capitals?
  - a Because they are capital cities.
  - b Because they have a lot of cinemas.
  - c Because tourists go there from all over the world.
  - d Because a lot of films are made there.
- 3 Travel agents will now
  - a organise trips to movie capitals.
  - b organise meetings with the director of your favourite films.
  - c take you to the location of your favourite scene in a film.
  - d organise tours of buildings in England.
- 4 What's the main reason that people visit film locations?
  - a Films are made in beautiful places.
  - b People feel good when they remember their favourite film.
  - c Some film fans want to be actors.
  - d It's easy to imagine your favourite scene.
- 5 Why did the writer write this text?
  - a To describe a new type of tourism.
  - b To review a film.
  - c To talk about successful films.
  - d To talk about places he has visited.

**5 Choose the correct definitions for these words from the text.**

- 1 have in common (line 1)
  - a to be similar
  - b to be very different
- 2 fans (line 10)
  - a people who don't like something
  - b people who like something
- 3 certain (line 12)
  - a all
  - b some
- 4 attracts (line 15)
  - a to make someone like something
  - b to interest people

**6 Replace the underlined words with the verbs in the box.**

**Word Builder**

came across   got back   got into  
gets out of   get past   find out

*came across*

- 1 I found a recording of an old film by chance.
- 2 It's surprising how many mistakes are missed by film editors.
- 3 In the film the secret agent escapes from prison.
- 4 What happened when the astronauts returned to Earth?
- 5 Did you get the information about the times of the film?
- 6 James Bond climbed into his sports car and drove away quickly.

**7 Choose the correct words.**

- 1 You must take off up your hat. The people behind us can't see the screen.
- 2 I love the scene where the rocket takes up off.
- 3 A film festival takes place at in Cannes every year.
- 4 I'm going to take part of in the school play.
- 5 In the film, the nurse takes care off from the soldiers in hospital.
- 6 I'd like to take up in acting when I'm older.

**8 Join the sentences in three ways, using however and although.**

**Sentence Builder**

- 1 I like the cinema. I usually watch DVDs at home.  
*Although I like the cinema, I usually watch DVDs at home.*  
*I usually watch DVDs at home, although I like the cinema.*  
*I like the cinema. However, I usually watch DVDs at home.*
- 2 Some stars are millionaires. The majority of actors don't earn very much.  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....
- 3 The first film won an award. The sequel wasn't very successful.  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....



## Useful Language

1 Complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

cut action face film  
stuntman shot move feeling

- Director:** 1. *Cut* ! This scene isn't working. You are very frightened, Helen, so we need more 2. .... from you.
- Helen:** Okay.
- Director:** Luke, we can't use a 3. .... to jump through the window, so can you do it?
- Luke:** Yes, okay.
- Director:** Let's start the scene over there. We'll get a better 4. .... from that side of the room.
- Helen:** Should I 5. .... nearer the window?
- Director:** Yes, but don't 6. .... the window. It's better to have your back to Luke when he jumps in. And it's easier to 7. ....
- Luke/Helen:** Right.
- Director:** Let's try it again. ... 8. ....  
... And, cut! That's much better. Well done, everyone.

## Key Expressions: Instructions and reasons

2 Match the sentence beginnings (1–8) with the endings (a–h).

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 Stand closer to Anna                      | d |
| 2 Please record the football match          |   |
| 3 Buy the film magazine                     |   |
| 4 Book the theatre tickets early            |   |
| 5 Don't forget the video camera             |   |
| 6 Fast forward the DVD                      |   |
| 7 Turn the TV to Channel 4                  |   |
| 8 Don't invite Sam to the cinema            |   |
| a to read a review of the movie.            |   |
| b because I want to see my favourite scene. |   |
| c so we can watch the film.                 |   |
| d so I can get a better shot.               |   |
| e so that I can watch it later.             |   |
| f to get the best seats.                    |   |
| g because he's already seen the film.       |   |
| h because I want to film the holiday.       |   |

3 Complete the sentences with the correct linkers in brackets and the endings in the box. There are two endings that you don't need.

I can score  
the audience can hear you  
read a review of our play  
you can record the play  
you get a good shot  
we're going to watch a video  
to film the scene  
you won't be able to finish the race

1



Speak more loudly (so that/because)  
so that the audience can hear you

2



Turn the lights off (because/so) .....



3



Pass the ball to me (to/so) .....

4



Turn to page 24 (so/to) .....

5



Don't move the camera (so that/to) .....

6



Don't run too fast (so/because) .....

4 Find and correct one mistake in each sentence.

### Sentence Builder

how

- 1 We don't know ~~who~~ to use a digital camera.
- 2 I don't know where I do get off the bus.
- 3 I don't know what to play chess.
- 4 We don't know where we to meet.
- 5 I don't know what do now.
- 6 We don't know when get the bus.
- 7 I don't know what do I buy for Sue's birthday.
- 8 We don't know how many tickets to buying.

### Your Turn

5 Write sentences for these situations.

- 1 You can't decide on plans for your birthday.  
I don't know *what to do for my birthday* .....
- 2 You haven't learnt to use your new mobile phone.  
I don't know .....
- 3 You haven't agreed a time to meet your best friend.  
I don't know .....
- 4 You can't decide on the food you want.  
I don't know .....
- 5 You haven't chosen a DVD.  
I don't know .....

### Listening

6 Listen to Paul and Emma talking about a film. Decide if each sentence is correct (YES) or incorrect (NO).

- |   | YES                                 | NO                       |
|---|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Both Emma and Paul watched the science fiction film.          | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 Emma didn't think the film was very good.                     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Paul thinks mistakes in films are important.                  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 Emma likes different films from Paul.                         | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 Emma's favourite film is set in the future.                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 At the end, Paul and Emma agree to go to the cinema together. | <input type="checkbox"/>            | <input type="checkbox"/> |



# Writing Challenge

## 1 Read the film review. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Tom Cruise plays an arms dealer. ☒ F
- 2 This film has a different director from the first two films. ☐
- 3 Tom Cruise's character has to capture an arm's dealer. ☐
- 4 The writer enjoyed the action scenes and special effects. ☐
- 5 The actors were good. ☐
- 6 The writer doesn't think the film is worth seeing. ☐

## 2 Choose the correct summary of each paragraph in the plan.

### Paragraph 1

- a summary of the film
- b basic information

### Paragraph 2

- a the plot
- b the special effects

### Paragraph 3

- a the photography
- b the reviewer's opinions

### Paragraph 4

- a the reviewer's recommendation
- b the story

## 3 Circle the correct linkers in italics in the review (1–8).

## 4 Write a review of a film you have seen at the cinema or on TV. Include this information:

- basic information about the film
- a summary of the plot
- your opinions
- your recommendation.



- 1 *Mission Impossible III* (2006) stars Tom Cruise as agent Ethan Hunt in the third spy thriller in the series. With a different director from the first two films, J J Abrams, the movie <sup>1</sup>*also/as* well stars Michelle Monaghan as Hunt's girlfriend and Phillip Seymour Hoffman as the enemy.
- 2 Ethan Hunt is a trainer of spies. One of his old pupils is captured by an evil arms dealer (Phillip Seymour Hoffman). Hunt's mission in this film is to rescue her. <sup>2</sup>*Although/However*, the mission goes wrong and Hunt's girlfriend (Michelle Monaghan) is put in danger.
- 3 There are a lot of exciting scenes in the film <sup>3</sup>*like/as* explosions and a helicopter chase. The special effects, <sup>4</sup>*such as/ such like* the jump from a Shanghai skyscraper, are also good. <sup>5</sup>*However/ Although*, the plot is a bit silly. <sup>6</sup>*As well/ Also*, the acting isn't very convincing. The star of the show is the arms dealer played by Hoffman <sup>7</sup>*although/however* he isn't used enough in the film.
- 4 I don't really recommend *Mission Impossible III*. If you really like spy films, then go to see it. <sup>8</sup>*Plus/However*, don't expect a brilliant story.



# Understanding Grammar: Present Perfect and Past Simple

→ Grammar Reference, page 118

- 1 Read the text. Underline the verbs in the Past Simple and circle the verbs in the Present Perfect.



'I love acting. I joined the drama club at school two years ago. I have appeared in two plays and three short films. I played Juliet in Shakespeare's play last year and I was the queen in a short fantasy film last term. Recently, I've directed a few film scenes. My family has seen all of my performances. My favourite actress is Kate Winslet. I've seen all of her films so far. She was brilliant in *Titanic* in 1997.'

- 2 Read the sentences and answer the questions.

- The spy series on TV was great.  
Has the series finished? yes/no
- How long have you been an actress?  
Is the person still an actress? yes/no
- I've seen the new James Bond film.  
Do we know when? yes/no
- What's happened in the film?  
Has the film finished? yes/no

- 3 Choose the best ending for each sentence, a or b.

- I've been to the cinema lots  
a last month. (b) recently.
- Johnny Depp appeared in  
a lots of films in his career.  
b *Pirates of the Caribbean* in 2006.
- Steven Spielberg has won  
a two Oscars so far.  
b an Oscar in 1998.
- Special effects have improved in films  
a in the 1990s. b recently.
- What was your favourite film  
a last year? b so far this year?
- How many plays have you appeared in  
a in your career so far? b in 2005?

- 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use the Present Perfect or Past Simple.

see	put	think	watch	not enjoy
direct	start	appear		

- My dad has seen all the Bond films so far.
- What ..... you ..... of the last *Star Wars* film?
- I ..... acting in 2005.
- How many films ..... Spielberg ..... in his career?
- My friend ..... in two films.
- What ..... you ..... on TV last night?
- We ..... on three plays at school recently.
- I ..... the play – it was too long and too complicated.

- 5 Complete the questions and then give true answers.

- Q: Have you and your friends ever appeared (appear) in a film?  
A: Yes, we have.  
Q: What film was (be) it?  
A: It was a short film at school.
- Q: ..... you ever ..... (join) an actor's fan club?  
A: .....  
Q: Whose club ..... (be) it?  
A: .....
- Q: ..... you ever ..... (watch) a black and white film?  
A: .....  
Q: ..... you ..... (enjoy) it?  
A: .....
- Q: ..... you and your friends ever ..... (leave) before the end of the film?  
A: .....  
Q: Why ..... you ..... (leave)?  
A: .....
- Q: ..... your friends ever ..... (notice) a mistake in the film?  
A: .....  
Q: What ..... (be) the mistake?  
A: .....
- Q: ..... your best friend ever ..... (buy) you a DVD?  
A: .....



# Language Check 6

## Vocabulary

### 1 Match the films with the key words.

action spy science-fiction horror  
crime romantic

Example explosions, fast cars *action*

- ghosts, monsters, haunted house .....
- planets, aliens, astronauts .....
- a thief, prison, police .....
- boyfriend, girlfriend, wedding .....
- secret agent, sports car, mission .....

☐ / 5

### 2 Write words for the descriptions.

Example a cartoon has this *animation*

- a funny film c.....
- a cowboy film w.....
- a film with songs m.....
- actors wear special clothes in a film set in the past c..... d.....
- an exciting story, often about crime th.....

☐ / 5

### 3 Complete the sentences with these verbs.

find out get back take part in take up  
come across take off

Example Please *find out* where he is.

- Please ..... your hat.
- Would you like to ..... a film?
- Where is the TV guide? Have you ..... it?
- I think I might ..... acting.
- What time will you ..... after the film?

☐ / 5

## Grammar

### 4 Cross out the verb that isn't possible.

Example I haven't made any plans yet. I *may/might/m going* to go to the cinema.

- The film was awful. I *won't/might/m not going* to buy the DVD.
- She was brilliant in that film. She's *going to/are going/I'll* be a big star.
- I enjoyed the first film. I *won't/may/might* go to see the sequel.

- Do you think you *will/might/going to* be an actor?
- I hope you *will/may/are going to* enjoy the film.
- Look! Bond *will/is going/I's going to* crash!
- We haven't decided but we *may/might/won't* go to see *Mission Impossible* at the cinema.
- I'm not sure but I think he *may/going to/might* win an award this year.

☐ / 8

### 5 Complete the text. Put these verbs into the Present Perfect or Past Simple.

~~be born~~ play make come direct  
become be play

Johnny Depp *was born* in 1963 and he 1..... his first film in 1984. In his career, he 2..... a lot of usual characters such as Captain Jack Sparrow in *Pirates of the Caribbean*. The first pirate film 3..... very popular and the sequel 4..... out in 2006. Johnny is also interested in music. He 5..... the guitar in different bands. Recently, he 6..... also ..... some films. Johnny Depp 7..... very popular worldwide.

☐ / 7

## Key Expressions

### 6 Choose the correct words.




Example Be quiet *because/so* we're filming.


- Learn your part carefully *to/so* be ready for the audition.
- Stand here *to/so that* I can take a photo of you.
- Please play the scene again *so/to* we can film it.
- Please use a microphone *so that/because* the audience can hear you.
- We can't film now *so/because* it's getting dark.


☐ / 5


### What's your score?

#### Module 6

- ☐ Vocabulary 
- ☐ Grammar 
- ☐ Key Expressions 
- ☐ / 35 Total

This is easy. 

I need more practice. 

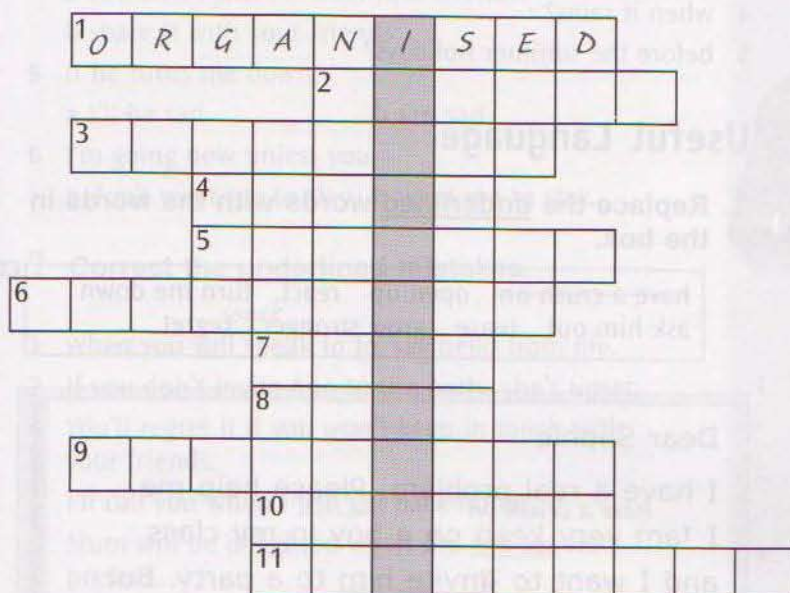
This is difficult. 



## Get Ready

### Vocabulary: Personality adjectives

1 Complete the puzzle and the mystery adjective.



#### This person:

- |  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1 is able to plan their work and life well | 6 is shy                |
| 2 never puts things away                   | 7 is nice to people     |
| 3 makes friends easily                     | 8 puts things away      |
| 4 isn't noisy                              | 9 isn't lazy            |
| 5 helps other people                       | 10 doesn't tell lies    |
|  | 11 likes meeting people |

2 Complete the descriptions with the pairs of adjectives.

easy-going / sociable   extrovert / talkative  
hard-working / practical   shy / sensitive  
thoughtful / reliable

- 'My sister never gets angry and she has lots of friends. She's really *easy-going* and *sociable*.'
- 'My little brother doesn't like taking to people and he cries a lot. He's very ..... and .....
- 'My best friend always remembers my birthday and she always keeps her promises. She's really ..... and .....
- 'My sister gets good grades and she can cook, light fires and put up our tent! She's much more ..... and ..... than me.'
- 'My friend loves meeting people and chatting on the phone. She's very ..... and .....

## Listening

3 Listen to Harry talking about his friends, Cara, Rani and Tim. Write the names with the correct information.

1

Name: .....

Interests: dance, travelling, meeting people

Personality: easy-going, energetic, extrovert

2

Name: .....

Interests: adventure sports, travelling, meeting people

Personality: outgoing, sociable, practical

3

Name: .....

Interests: music, the Internet

Personality: introvert, thoughtful, helpful

## Your Turn

4 Complete the sentences to make them true for you.

- With my friends, I'm usually ..... and .....
- At home, I'm sometimes ..... and .....
- At school, I think I need to be more ..... and .....
- People usually think I'm ..... and .....
- My best friend is usually ..... and .....
- My favourite person in the world is my ..... because he's/she's ..... and .....



# 19 Vocabulary and Grammar

## Vocabulary: Feelings

- 1 Complete the poem with the words in the box. Use the rhyme to help you.

depressed   scared   upset  
annoyed   sad



Don't be 1 depressed...  
If you fail your test  
You mustn't feel 2.....  
If your team is bad  
It's silly to be 3.....  
Your problems can be shared  
Don't be 4.....  
Life can be enjoyed  
When you feel down  
Your friends will be around  
Don't be 5.....  
We like you – don't forget

- 2 Choose the correct adjective to complete the sentences.

- I get angry / *worried* when my sister uses my things.
- I've taken up yoga and now I feel more *relaxed* / *excited*.
- I've just passed my driving test and I'm *worried* / *delighted*.
- I broke my friend's mobile and he was *furious* / *excited*.
- Did you feel *nervous* / *angry* before your audition?
- I get a bit *bored* / *anxious* before exams.
- I'm having a party soon and I'm really *excited* / *angry*.

## Your Turn

- 3 Write adjectives to answer the questions about you.

How do you feel:

- before exams? .....
- when you watch the news? .....
- when you listen to music? .....
- when it rains? .....
- before the summer holidays? .....

## Useful Language

- 4 Replace the underlined words with the words in the box.

~~have a crush on~~   open up   react   turn me down  
ask him out   tease   grow stronger   regret

Dear Sophie

I have a real problem. Please help me.

I <sup>have a crush on</sup> am very keen on a boy in my class and I want to invite him to a party. But I think he will say no. My friends laugh at me all the time because I'm shy. I try not to respond but it's very hard. I want to express my feelings but I get very anxious. If I don't speak to this boy, I'm sure I'll feel sorry about it. I really want my friendship with him to develop. What can I do?

Diane

## Grammar: Future conditional

→ Grammar Reference, page 119

- 5 Match the sentence beginnings (1–6) with the endings (a–f).

- |                              |                                       |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 If you feel sad,           | a you'll be more relaxed.             |
| 2 I won't be angry           | b ask her out.                        |
| 3 I won't contact her        | c unless she says sorry.              |
| 4 When you finish your exams | d if you tell the truth.              |
| 5 If you like Jane,          | e when she finds out about the crash. |
| 6 Mum will be furious        | f call me.                            |



## 6 Choose the correct ending, a or b.

- 1 When you feel anxious,  
a you'll try yoga.      **b try yoga.**
- 2 If you don't take care of your friends,  
a you'll lose them.      **b lose them.**
- 3 I won't ask her out unless she  
a calls me back.      **b doesn't call me back.**
- 4 When you have a problem,  
a you won't share it with your friends.  
**b share it with your friends.**
- 5 If he turns me down,  
a I'll be sad.      **b I'm sad.**
- 6 I'm going now unless you  
a don't want me to stay. **b want me to stay.**

## 7 Correct the underlined mistakes.

*speaks*

- 1 When you will speak to Jo, say hello from me.
- 2 If you don't invite Ann to the party, she's upset.
- 3 You'll regret it if you won't keep in touch with your friends.
- 4 I'll call you when I will get back home.
- 5 Mum will be delighted when she will see her present.
- 6 If you will feel sad, I'll be there for you.

## 8 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use no more than three words.

- 1 If you don't contact her, she'll be very upset.  
She'll be very upset unless you contact her.
- 2 She won't give you advice unless you ask her for it.  
She will only give you advice if you ask her for it.
- 3 I'll go to the party if you go, too.  
I won't go to the party if you don't go, too.
- 4 You won't have more friends unless you open up more.  
You will have more friends if you open up more.
- 5 If you don't stop teasing her, she won't be your friend.  
She won't be your friend unless you stop teasing her.
- 6 She'll be angry unless we say sorry.  
If we don't say sorry, she'll be angry.

## 9 Complete the sentences with the pairs of verbs in the box.

want / express    not laugh / make  
disagree / not be    ask / be    not tease / tell  
feel / look after



- 1 If you want to keep your friends,  
express your feelings.
- 2 When you disagree about something,  
ask aggressive.
- 3 Make your friends when they  
don't laugh you their problems.
- 4 If a friend isn't for advice, be  
honest.
- 5 When your friends are down,  
look after them.
- 6 Tease at people when they are  
a mistake.

## Your Turn

### 10 Complete the sentences to make them true for you.

Example

If I pass my exams, I'll be delighted.  
When I finish school tomorrow,  
I'll meet my friends.

- 1 If I'm late for school tomorrow, .....
- 2 If my friend is free at the weekend, .....
- 3 If I have time this evening, .....
- 4 When I leave school, .....
- 5 When I'm eighteen years old, .....
- 6 When I've got a job, .....



## Vocabulary: Adjectives

### 1 Match the descriptions (1–6) to the adjectives (a–f).

- 1 My cousin is very different from me. I love sports and being outside, but she just watches TV. And she never helps at home. d
  - 2 My uncle likes to tell jokes. But he forgets the words, so he isn't funny. I always go red when he tells a joke to my friends!
  - 3 I love my sister but she can be difficult. You can't tell her what to do. When she makes a decision, she won't ever change!
  - 4 My best friend is great. He has a brilliant imagination. He writes stories and he's really good at drawing, too.
  - 5 My little brother always wants to play football with my friends and me. I try not to get angry with him, but it's difficult.
  - 6 My classmate, Simon, is a good friend but he isn't very easy-going. You can see him in the morning and he's fine. Then in the afternoon, he's annoyed or upset.
- a** creative    **b** embarrassing    **c** irritating  
**d** lazy    **e** moody    **f** stubborn

### 2 Which adjective in Exercise 1 has a similar meaning to *annoying*?

## Useful Language

### 3 Complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

argument   angry   offer   generation gap  
 fault   natural   argue   disaster zone

- Grandma:** Hello, Mark. What are you doing here?
- Mark:** I had a big 1 argument with Mum last night.
- Grandma:** What did you 2 ..... about?
- Mark:** My bedroom – she said it was a 3 ..... But I share it with Nick so it's his 4 ....., too. Mum got very 5 ..... Nick didn't 6 ..... to help, so I had to tidy up.
- Grandma:** Well, that's not very fair, but all families have problems – that's only 7 ..... I remember your mum was a very difficult teenager. I couldn't understand her, but that's just the 8 .....

### 4 Choose the correct words.

#### Word Builder

- 1 I made/did a mistake in the test.
- 2 I can't do/make calculations in my head.
- 3 We enjoy making/doing puzzles.
- 4 Top footballers do/make a lot of money.
- 5 Make/Do your best in the race.
- 6 The children made/did a mess in the kitchen.
- 7 My mum does/makes a fuss about my clothes.
- 8 Can I do/make a suggestion?

### 5 Complete the sentences with the pairs of verbs in the box. Use the correct form of *make* and *let*.

#### Sentence Builder

not let / have    make / tidy    let / stay up  
 make / do    let / work    make / train

- 1 My friend has an earring but my parents won't let me have one.
- 2 My dad ..... me ..... the washing-up every day.
- 3 Our teachers ..... us ..... our classroom once a week.
- 4 My coach ..... me ..... very hard.
- 5 Mum ..... me ..... late at weekends.
- 6 Our teachers ..... us ..... in pairs in language classes.





## Your Turn

**6 Complete the questions with the correct form of do or make. Then give true answers.**

- 1 Can you ..... phone calls at home?
- 2 How much homework do you ..... every day?
- 3 Do you ..... a big effort in sports lessons?
- 4 Do you ..... athletics?
- 5 Do you ..... friends easily?
- 6 Do you ever ..... the shopping?
- 7 In what subjects do you ..... well?
- 8 Do you ..... your bed every day?

**7 Write true sentences. Use make or let and the ideas in the lists.**

Example

*My mum lets me make phone calls at home. OR My mum won't let me make phone calls at home.*

#### At home

make phone calls at home  
get up early at weekends  
do household chores  
have a party on my birthday

#### At school

use a calculator in maths exams  
use mobile phones in class  
wear our own clothes to school  
do a lot of homework

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....
- 6 .....
- 7 .....
- 8 .....

## Reading

**8 Read the text and decide if the statements are correct (C) or incorrect (I).**

- 1 Teenagers argue a lot with their grandparents. ☐
- 2 Researchers interviewed students from the University of Glasgow. ☐
- 3 About 150 people were interviewed in the study. ☐
- 4 Grandparents are helpful when children argue with their parents. ☐
- 5 Only young children are very close to their grandparents. ☐
- 6 It's easy for teenagers to talk to their grandparents. ☐
- 7 Grandparents sometimes help with money. ☐
- 8 Older people can't learn about modern technology. ☐

### Forget the generation gap – teenagers say their best friends are their grandparents

Don't believe that teenagers and adults argue all the time – teenagers and their grandparents get on very well together. Researchers at the University of Glasgow have done a study on the relationship between teenagers and their older relatives.

- 5 They interviewed 75 young people aged 10–19, and 73 older people aged between 50 and their late 80s. It shows that grandparents play a very important role in families. They look after children, and they give a link to the past. They can also help when there are disagreements between teenagers and
- 10 parents.

Most people believe that only very young children have a close relationship with grandparents. This is because they often take care of the children when parents are at work or out in the evening. The study shows that when children become teenagers,

15 they are still very close to their grandparents. Although teenagers spend more time with friends than with their grandparents, many young people say that their grandparents are very important to them.

So, in what ways are grandparents important?

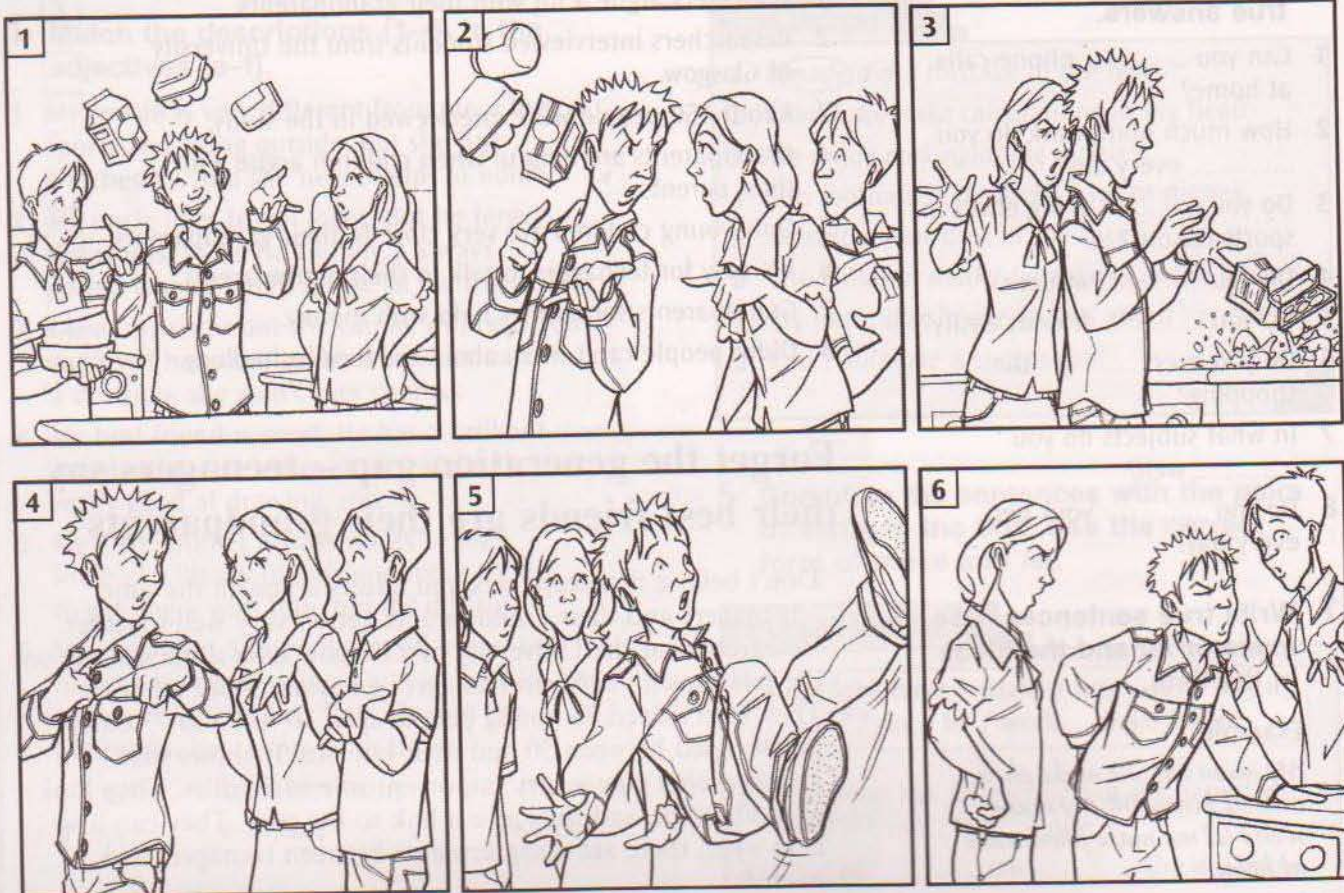
- 20 • They are good listeners. It's easy for teenagers to share their problems and express their feelings with their grandparents.
- They help to look after children and they can provide financial help in small ways, like pocket money, and in bigger ways, like school fees.
- 25 • They help young people develop respect and responsibility. They also help communication in a family.
- They know a lot about a family's history and so can help teenagers understand about the past.
- And what are the advantages for older people?
- 30 • They can have fun with their grandchildren and take part in different activities.
- They can stay active and be part of the modern world.
- They often learn about modern technology so they can keep up with their grandchildren.
- 35 There is a lot of negative news about the generation gap, so it's good to hear that older people and teenagers can be good friends.



# 21 Communication

## Useful Language

1 Complete the dialogue with the sentences in the box.



Don't be so silly. Serves you right. Watch out!  
I'm sick of you being stupid. It's all his fault.  
Calm down, you two.

Alex: Look at me! I can juggle!

Bella: 1. *Don't be so silly*, Alex. You'll drop everything on the floor.

Alex: No, I won't.

Bella: Put the food down, Alex. 2. ....

Alex: I'm not being stupid. It's fun. Don't tell me what to do.

Zak: 3. .... Stop arguing.

Alex: *[drops all the food on the floor]* Oh, no!

Bella: Alex! We don't have enough food now.

Zak: I'll go to the supermarket to buy some more eggs and tomatoes.

Bella: No way! Alex should go. 4. ....

Alex: Don't worry. I'll do the shopping.

Zak: Alex! 5. .... The floor is wet.

Alex: *[falls on the wet floor]* Ow! My back.

Bella: 6. ...., Alex.

Alex: Shut up, Bella. My back hurts.

Zak: Come on, you two. Please be friends.

2 Choose two adjectives from the box to describe each of the characters in Exercise 1.

annoying	helpful
stubborn	practical
organised	kind
extrovert	thoughtful
reliable	

Alex

.....

Bella

.....

Zak

.....



## Key Expressions: Making suggestions

### 3 Choose the correct words to complete the suggestions, a or b.

- 1 ..... do the washing-up?  
a Why don't      **b) Shall we**
- 2 ..... inviting Ann to the cinema?  
a What about      **b We could**
- 3 ..... send Granddad a birthday card.  
a Let's      **b Why don't**
- 4 ..... have a party at the end of term.  
a What about      **b We could**
- 5 ..... we go for a pizza?  
a Let's      **b Why don't**
- 6 ..... go shopping?  
a Shall we      **b Why don't**
- 7 ..... meet outside the cinema.  
a We could      **b Why don't**
- 8 ..... watching a DVD later?  
a Let's      **b What about**

### 4 Write the words in the correct order. Add the correct punctuation.

- 1 sailing take let's up  
*Let's take up sailing.*
- 2 in visit let's hospital Max
- 3 youth join we don't club why the
- 4 surprise a we shall party organise
- 5 do sponsored we could walk a
- 6 Internet on about what the looking

### 5 Match the suggestions (1–6) in Exercise 4 to the situations (a–f).

- a They need some information for a project. ☒
- b They want to raise money for charity. ☐
- c They want to try a new activity. ☐
- d It's their friend's birthday. ☐
- e Their friend is ill. ☐
- f They want something to do at weekends. ☐

## Your Turn

### 6 Imagine these situations. Write suggestions for each one.

- 1 You are talking to your friend. Another friend is feeling sad.  
.....
- 2 You are talking a classmate. A new student has joined your class.  
.....
- 3 You are talking to your P.E. teacher. Your team is losing a lot of matches.  
.....
- 4 You are talking to your brother/sister. It's your mum's birthday.  
.....
- 5 You are talking to your friend. You have missed the bus to school.  
.....
- 6 You are talking to your grandparents. They want to learn about computers.  
.....

## Listening

### 7 Listen to some information about a trip. Complete the missing information.

#### Trip to Oxford

#### Journey time

- Train 1 *one hour forty minutes*
- Coach 2 ..... hours and 15 minutes

#### Prices

- Train 3£ ..... return
- Coach 4£ ..... return

#### Train times

- Leaves: 5 ..... Arrives in Oxford: 8.25 a.m.
- Leaves: 8.30 a.m. Arrives in Oxford: 6 ..... a.m.

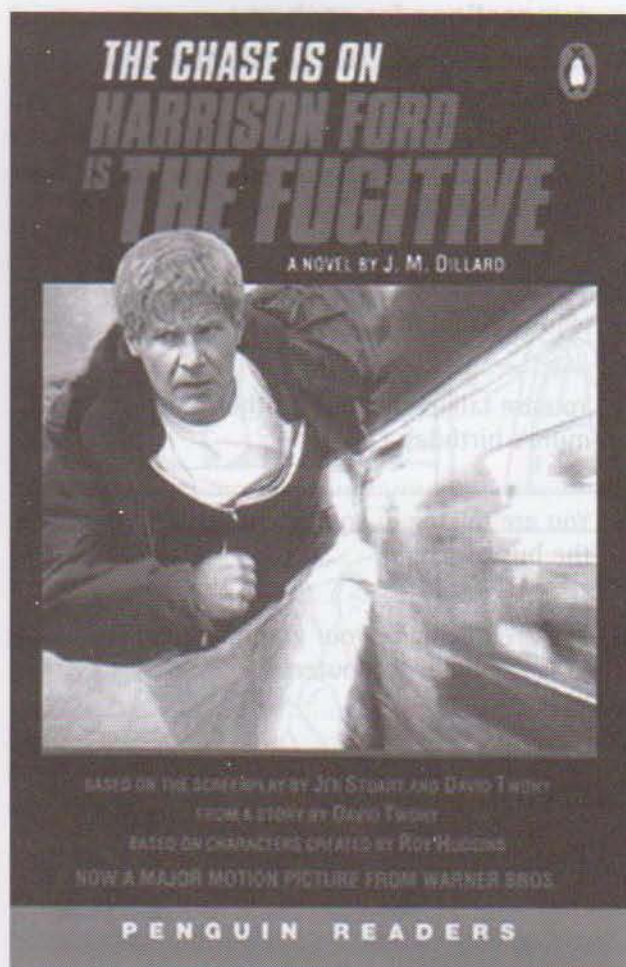
#### Meet Peter

- Place: at the 7 ..... in the station
- Time: 8 .....



# Reading Corner 4

## The Fugitive



### 1 Read the introduction. Choose the correct information.

- 1 A fugitive is someone who is *going to prison/escaping from danger*.
- 2 Kimble wants to *find/kill* the man who killed his wife.
- 3 Gerard *is/isn't* following Kimble very closely.

One night a man with one arm kills Dr Richard Kimble's wife. The police think Kimble did it and he is sent to prison. But Kimble escapes from the police and his search for the man with one arm begins ... While Kimble is searching for the man with one arm, other people are searching for Kimble. US Detective Gerard is looking for him, and he is only one step behind, Kimble has to work fast to find his wife's killer, because Gerard wants Kimble – dead or alive.

This is the story from the film *The Fugitive* (1993), a big Hollywood film with Harrison Ford and Tommy Lee Jones ...

### 2 Read the Summary and Extract 1. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

#### SUMMARY

After Kimble's trial, two guards were taking him and another man, Copeland, to prison by bus. The bus was destroyed in an accident on a railway line. The two guards survived, but Copeland was shot. Kimble was hurt in the accident but he escaped. Detective Gerard, a policeman called Newman and a policewoman called Poole are investigating the scene.

#### EXTRACT 1

'The prisoners are dead,' the guard said. 'I shot Copeland and Kimble died in that bus. Look at it!'

'Did you see Kimble die?' Gerard asked him.

'Uh, ... no, I didn't, but ...'

'Then how do you know he's dead?' Gerard asked.

Suddenly, Newman ran up. 'Sir, I found these by the railway line.' He gave Gerard the keys to the bus. 'They were near the bus,' Newman said.

'Why were these keys by the line?' Gerard asked the older guard angrily.

'I ... I gave them to Kimble ...' the guard said.

'And he got out of the bus, didn't he?' Gerard told him. 'Kimble's alive!' Gerard shouted to all the policemen. 'Search every building and road in ten kilometres from here. Go!'

Gerard went back to his car and looked at the police photograph of Kimble: a rich man, intelligent, and there was something in his eyes. ... They were sad. Sad?

'Why did you kill your wife, Kimble?' Gerard asked the photo. 'You had everything. But I'll catch you. You'll never kill again, my friend.'

- 1 There were three people on the bus before the crash. ☒
- 2 One of the guards killed Kimble. ☐
- 3 Kimble escaped from the bus because he had the keys. ☐
- 4 Gerard ordered the police officers to look for Kimble. ☐
- 5 Gerard predicted that he would kill Kimble. ☐

### 3 Answer the questions.

- 1 Why do you think Kimble looks sad in the photo?
- 2 Where might Kimble be now?
- 3 How do you think Gerard will catch Kimble?



# Module 8

## 4 Read the Summary. Where do you think Kimble is going?

### SUMMARY

After the accident, Kimble went to a hospital. He cleaned the cut on his leg but he didn't speak to anyone. One of the guards was at the hospital and he recognised Kimble. Kimble took an ambulance and drove away.

## 5 Read Extract 2. Who or what do the underlined words refer to?

- 1 Kimble 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 .....  
5 ..... 6 ..... 7 .....

### EXTRACT 2

Gerard was talking to Poole. 'Why do you think Kimble killed his wife?' he asked. 'Was 1he angry? Did he want 2her money?'

Before 3she could answer, Newman ran up and said, '4Sir, that young guard saw Kimble at the hospital!'

'What time?'

'9.30, sir,' Newman said. 'Twenty minutes ago.' 'Then 5he's still somewhere near here. Let's go!' Gerard shouted.

Kimble drove fast for a long time. He saw the Tennessee River hundreds of metres below. The grey and white water looked very cold. He drove into a wide tunnel. 6It went through a mountain by the river. There was a light at the end of the tunnel, but suddenly Kimble saw a police helicopter and several police cars across the road behind 7it. Kimble stopped his ambulance in the tunnel.

## 6 Look at the picture. What do you think will happen next?



## 7 Write the letter of the missing sentences in the correct place in the text.

- a 'I did not kill my wife!' Kimble said.
- b His gun disappeared into the water.
- c 'You'll kill yourself ... Stop! ... Kimble!'
- d 'You can't get away!'
- e 'Where's he gone?'
- f 'STAY IN THE AMBULANCE, KIMBLE. DO NOT MOVE.'
- g He moved his hands over the sides of the tunnel and found an opening – it was a small side tunnel.
- h Kimble turned and ran to the end of the small tunnel, but he suddenly stopped.

### EXTRACT 3

1... a policeman shouted.

The tunnel was dark. Kimble got out of the ambulance quietly and tried to think. He looked back at the opening of the tunnel – more cars, more police. He looked round and then moved as quietly as an animal. There was water by his feet. 2..... He went in.

Gerard and Poole came down the big tunnel and looked into the empty ambulance.

'Where is he, sir?' Poole asked. 3.....

'He's near,' Gerard said. 'I can smell him. Poole, take a look down there, along the tunnel.'

Gerard walked along slowly. He felt the sides of the tunnel, then he found the opening to the side tunnel and he went in. He had a light in one hand and a gun in the other. He ran along the small tunnel, but the floor was wet and he fell. 4..... Gerard tried to stand, but suddenly a strong hand took his, and Gerard looked up into that sad face, those sad eyes – Dr Richard Kimble.

5..... He had Gerard's gun.

'That's not my problem, Kimble. Now give me ...'

'Sir! Sir!' Poole shouted in the dark. 'Are you there ...?'

For a second Gerard turned. 6..... Hundreds of metres below he saw the angry, white water of the Tennessee River.

'Kimble!' Gerard shouted. 'Throw down the gun and come here! 7.....'

'I want to live,' Kimble thought. 'But I want to find Helen's killer, too.' He turned back to the river below, ready to jump.

'Kimble! No!' Gerard shouted. 8.....

But he jumped – down, down into the cold dangerous water far below.



# Language Check 7

## Vocabulary

### 1 Write the opposites of the adjectives.

Example

sad - d e l i g h t e d

- 1 relaxed - a \_\_\_\_\_ s
- 2 quiet - t \_\_\_\_\_ e
- 3 extrovert - i \_\_\_\_\_ t
- 4 lazy - e \_\_\_\_\_ c
- 5 bored - e \_\_\_\_\_ d
- 6 tidy - u \_\_\_\_\_ y
- 7 shy - s \_\_\_\_\_ e

☐ / 7

### 2 Complete the sentences with **make** or **do**.

Example

Can I make a phone call, please?

- 1 I broke a window but my dad didn't \_\_\_\_\_ a fuss.
- 2 I can't \_\_\_\_\_ this calculation.
- 3 You never \_\_\_\_\_ the washing-up.
- 4 Did you \_\_\_\_\_ well in the competition?
- 5 I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ any mistakes in the exam.
- 6 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ athletics?
- 7 Don't \_\_\_\_\_ a mess in your bedroom.
- 8 I don't \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money.

☐ / 8

## Grammar

### 3 Choose the correct words.

Example

She won't come to school unless if she feels better.

- 1 When you will feel/feel sad, just call me.
- 2 If you don't leave now, you'll be/you are late for school.
- 3 I won't invite her to my party if/unless she apologises.
- 4 If I will ask/ask my parents for a motorbike, they'll say no.
- 5 When Mum see/sees this mess, she'll be furious.

☐ / 5

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

Example

If you have (have) time, please do (do) the shopping.

- 1 If you \_\_\_\_\_ (not come) out with me, I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) upset.
- 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ (not finish) tidying up unless you \_\_\_\_\_ (help) me.
- 3 When you \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a mistake, \_\_\_\_\_ (not worry) about it.
- 4 Dad \_\_\_\_\_ (not let) you go to the party unless you \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) your homework.
- 5 If you \_\_\_\_\_ (like) Helen, just \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) her out.

☐ / 10

## Key Expressions

### 5 Complete the dialogue with these words.

shall Let's don't about could Shall

- A: What shall we do to celebrate the end of term?  
 B: We 1 go on a trip to London.  
 A: Yes, but that's very expensive.  
 C: What 2 going to the beach?  
 A: Mm, a bit boring. We do that every week.  
 B: Why 3 we go to the theme park?  
 C: That's a good idea. 4 we invite everyone in the class?  
 A: Yes, okay. 5 do some invitations on the computer.

☐ / 5

### What's your score?

#### Module 7

- |  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Vocabulary      | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Grammar         | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Key Expressions | <input type="radio"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> / 35 Total      |                       |

This is easy. 😊

I need more practice. 😐

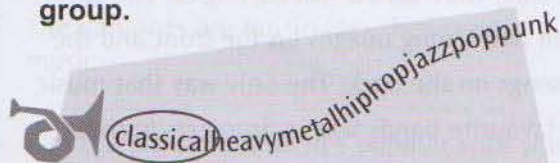
This is difficult. 😞



## Get Ready

### Vocabulary: Music

- 1 Find six styles of music. Write the correct style next to each performer/group.

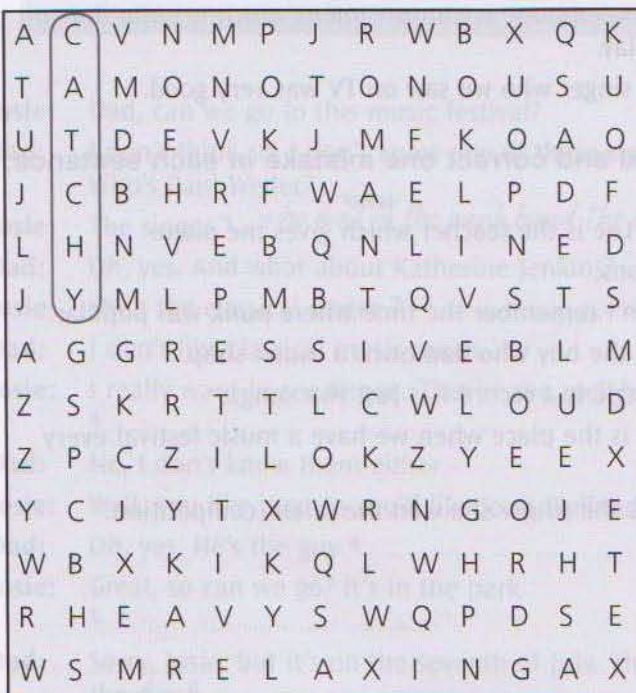


- 1 Antonín Dvořák – *classical*
- 2 50 Cent – .....
- 3 Kylie Minogue – .....
- 4 Green Day – .....
- 5 Lordi – .....
- 6 Jamie Cullum – .....

- 2 Listen and number the styles of music.

dance	1	rap		rock	
classical		pop		jazz	

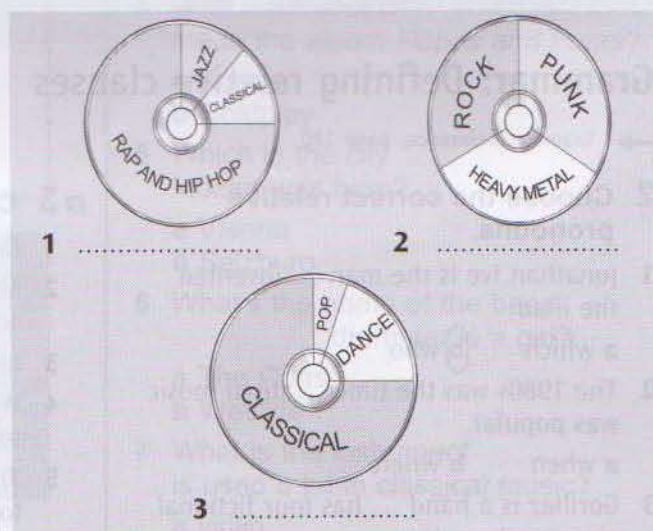
- 3 Find eleven more adjectives to describe music. Write the words next to the definitions.



- 1 easy to remember – *catchy*
- 2 the opposite of *happy* – .....
- 3 music that repeats – .....
- 4 similar to jazz – .....
- 5 love songs are this – .....
- 6 boring – .....
- 7 makes you feel relaxed – .....
- 8 the opposite of *quiet* – .....
- 9 the opposite of *fast* – .....
- 10 rock music can be this – .....
- 11 punk is this – .....
- 12 full of energy – .....

### Listening

- 4 Listen to Paula, Samir and Eric talking about their favourite music. Write the correct name under the diagrams.



### Your Turn

- 5 Complete the diagram for you.



- 6 Complete the text with true information about music. Use the adjectives from Exercise 3.

My favourite music is .....  
 I like it because it's .....  
 and ..... I don't mind  
 ..... because it's .....  
 I never listen to .....  
 because it's .....



## Vocabulary: Making music

### 1 Choose the correct words.



The way people listen to music is changing. In the past, music was <sup>1</sup>recorded/launched on black plastic called vinyl. Records with lots of songs were called <sup>2</sup>albums/soundtracks and records with just two songs (one each side) were called <sup>3</sup>shorts/singles. The covers of these records often had strong images on the front and the <sup>4</sup>music/lyrics of the songs on the back. The only way that music fans could see their favourite bands was in <sup>5</sup>concerts/festivals. Then music <sup>6</sup>plays/videos became popular so music fans could see and hear their favourite songs on TV. CDs replaced vinyl records in the 1980s. The world of music changed again when Apple <sup>7</sup>launched/recorded the iPod. Now people can <sup>8</sup>download/release music from the Internet and listen to it wherever they want.

## Grammar: Defining relative clauses

→ Grammar Reference, page 120

### 2 Choose the correct relative pronouns.

- Jonathan Ive is the man ... invented the iPod.  
a which      **b who**
- The 1980s was the time ... disco music was popular.  
a when      **b where**
- Gorillaz is a band ... has four fictional, cartoon characters.  
a that      **b whose**
- Robbie Williams is a singer ... was in Take That.  
a which      **b who**
- Sun Studio in Memphis was the place ... Elvis recorded.  
a where      **b when**
- Jazz is music ... has changed a lot since the 1940s.  
a which      **b whose**
- Eminem is a rapper ... lyrics are sometimes aggressive.  
a who      **b whose**
- Thriller* is an album ... has sold millions of copies around the world.  
a that      **b whose**

### 3 Cross out the relative pronouns where possible.

- Jazz is a music ~~that~~ older people usually listen to.
- MP3 players are gadgets that can store hundreds of songs.
- My dad is a person who loves classical music.
- Woodstock was a festival that thousands of people went to in 1969.
- The saxophone is an instrument which is quite difficult to play.
- The singer who we saw on TV was very good.

### 4 Find and correct one mistake in each sentence.

- Mrs Lee is the teacher <sup>who</sup> ~~which~~ gives me piano lessons.
- I don't remember the time where punk was popular.
- He's the boy who dad owns a music shop.
- A single is a record has just two songs.
- This is the place when we have a music festival every year.
- She's the singer she won the talent competition.



**5** Join the sentences with a relative pronoun. Sometimes more than one pronoun is possible.

- My friend works in a shop. It sells CDs and DVDs.  
*My friend works in a shop that/which sells CDs and DVDs.*
- That's the girl. Her brother is the singer in a band.  
.....
- This is Liverpool. John Lennon was born here.  
.....
- I remember the concert. I first heard rap then.  
.....
- The Ramones are musicians. They created a new style of music  
.....
- Rap is a style of music. It's popular with young people.  
.....

**6** Choose the correct information in the box to complete the dialogue. Make each sentence with a relative clause.

we go on holiday then  
they had a hit single *Somewhere Only We Know*  
~~he was in the punk band The Jam~~  
her album won an award  
they have a lot of concerts there  
he plays the piano

### City Festival

People's Park, Saturday July 7

Paul Weller, former lead singer of The Jam

Keane, British rock band

Katherine Jenkins, winner of Classical Album of the Year

Jools Holland and his Rhythm and Blues Orchestra

- Josie:** Dad, can we go to this music festival?  
**Dad:** I don't think so. I don't know any of these singers. Who's Paul Weller?  
**Josie:** The singer 1. *who was in the punk band The Jam*...  
**Dad:** Oh, yes. And what about Katherine Jenkins?  
**Josie:** She's the classical singer 2.....  
**Dad:** I don't like classical music much.  
**Josie:** I really want to see Keane. They're the rock band 3.....  
**Dad:** No, I don't know them either.  
**Josie:** Well, you like jazz, so you'll like Jools Holland.  
**Dad:** Oh, yes. He's the guy 4.....  
**Josie:** Great, so can we go? It's in the park 5.....  
**Dad:** Sorry, Josie, but it's on the seventh of July. That's the day 6.....

### Your Turn

**7** Complete the questions in the quiz with the correct relative pronouns. Then choose the correct answers.

### Music Quiz

- Who is the singer *whose* sister also makes music?  
a Ronan Keating  
b Michael Jackson
- Which is the country jazz was born?  
a The UK  
b the USA
- Which was the year ..... the Live 8 concerts were given?  
a 2005  
b 2000
- Who are the band ..... made the album *Hopes and Fears*?  
a Keane  
b Coldplay
- Which is the city ..... Mozart was born?  
a Vienna  
b Salzburg
- What's the name of the band ..... drummer is a girl?  
a The Corrs  
b Westlife
- What is the instrument ..... is used a lot in classical music?  
a violin  
b saxophone
- Which was the song ..... made Madonna famous?  
a Survivor  
b Holiday



**8** Replace the underlined information to make the sentences true for you.

- I don't listen to songs that have violent lyrics.
- I prefer music that makes me feel happy.
- I like singers who write their own songs.
- I don't like bands who play heavy metal.
- My parents won't let me go to concerts where there are big crowds of people.
- I listen to music when I want to relax.



## Vocabulary: Instruments

## 1 Write the words in the correct category.

synthesizer clarinet double bass organ  
violin saxophone bass guitar flute drums  
trumpet cello acoustic guitar piano

## Reading

## 2 Read the text. Choose the correct answer, a, b, c or d.

**Belinda Clarke,**  
**record company manager**

I work for a small, independent company that produces classical music. My love of music started when I was a child. I had piano lessons but I wasn't very good! I loved listening to music but I didn't enjoy playing very much. I gave up lessons when I was about fourteen. Then I started buying CDs – not only classical music but also pop and reggae. I went to university to study French and Spanish. I also worked as a DJ in a local radio station and I helped on the university music magazine. There are about 1,000 record labels in the UK. Some of them are very big companies but there are some small, independent companies, too. They produce different types of music – from hip hop to classical. I do different things in my job every day. I go to lots of concerts and I travel to different countries to find new musicians. I help the musicians in the recording studio. I also organise videos and the photos for the CD covers. There are pros and cons of working in the record industry. I love working with creative people and being in a team. I also enjoy travelling but it can be very tiring. We work very long hours when we are making a CD. The pay isn't very good either. You can earn a lot in a very big music company, but my company is still quite small. I don't really mind about the pay, because my job is so enjoyable. What do you need to work for a record company? The most important thing is to love music. You also need to be organised and hard-working. When you first start in the industry, you'll need to work very long hours and do quite monotonous jobs. It isn't always exciting! I also think it's important to get a university education first. You need to know about the world and to communicate well.



Electronic	
Keyboard	
Percussion	
String	
Wind	

- In this text, Belinda is
  - talking about her love of music. ☐
  - describing her working life. ☒
  - complaining about her job. ☐
  - giving advice to musicians. ☐
- What does Belinda say about learning to play the piano?
  - She started when she was fourteen. ☐
  - She really enjoyed it. ☐
  - She preferred listening to CDs. ☐
  - She wasn't very talented. ☐
- How does Belinda feel about the bad things in her job?
  - She wants to earn more money. ☐
  - She doesn't like working long hours. ☐
  - She accepts them because she likes her job. ☐
  - She's tired of travelling. ☐
- What things are important in Belinda's job?
  - to love music, to work hard, to have a degree ☐
  - to love music, to like travelling, to be creative ☐
  - to love music, to work hard, to be exciting ☐
  - to love music, to be a good musician, to earn a lot ☐
- What might Belinda say about her job?
  - 'I like my job because I enjoy playing classical music'. ☐
  - 'I still love music but I don't like my job very much'. ☐
  - 'Although it's hard work, I'm really happy in my job'. ☐
  - 'I like my job but I want to move to a bigger company'. ☐



## 3 Complete the descriptions with the correct form of the words in brackets.

## 6 Join the sentences using the words in brackets. Make any necessary changes.

### Word Builder

- Music from this country is quite 1 *fashionable* (fashion) now. Percussion is very important in the music. It has 2 (energy) rhythms and it's 3 (wonder) to dance to. Other instruments include the piano and trumpet, but not often 4 (electron) instruments.
- Music from this country can be 5 (excite) and 6 (live), or more 7 (relax). Musicians play instruments like the *sitar* – a type of guitar – and the *tabla* – a pair of hand drums. Some music from this country has become popular in Europe.
- This country's music has an 8 (interest) history in folk and 9 (classic) music. Important instruments include the violin and the *cimbalom* – an instrument with strings that you hit. 10 (Fame) composers include Béla Bartók and Zoltán Kodály. They recorded 11 (beauty) folk music played by the local people.

- Music can be exciting. It can be relaxing too. (both / and)  
*Music can be both exciting and relaxing.*
- I can't play the piano. I can't sing. (neither / nor)
- Bach was a talented musician. He was a great composer, too. (not only / but also)
- At my school you can learn the piano. You can also learn the violin. (either / or)

## 4 Match the descriptions in Exercise 3 to the countries.

Hungary ☐ Cuba ☐ India ☐

## 5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

- My friend plays the guitar. She writes songs, too. (both / and)

### Sentence Builder

both nor also and either neither

	School of Rock	Band Academy
drums	✓	✓
saxophone	✗	✗
bass guitar	✓	✓
song writing	✗	✓
playing in a band	✗	✓
music exams	✗	✗

- You can play the drums at *both* School of Rock and Band Academy.
- School of Rock nor Band Academy give saxophone lessons.
- Band Academy offers not only song writing but playing in a band.
- You can play the bass guitar at School of Rock or Band Academy.
- You can play both the drums the bass guitar at Band Academy.
- Neither School of Rock Band Academy offer music exams.

## Your Turn

## 7 Make adjectives from the words in the box. Then write true sentences.

fame catch fun repeat  
excite expense

- The most *famous* musician/singer in my country is
- The most concert in my city was by . It cost
- I think the most type of music is . It's great.
- The most pop song at the moment is . Everybody is singing it.
- I think the most type of music is . It's so monotonous.
- My favourite comedy is . I think it's really



# 24 Communication

## 9 Useful Language

### 1 Choose the correct words.

We are going to <sup>1</sup>give/make a presentation  
<sup>2</sup>of/about music. We're feeling a bit  
<sup>3</sup>nervous/nerve. It's important to try to  
<sup>4</sup>relaxing/relax. The teachers are ready for  
us. <sup>5</sup>Let's/Right, you <sup>6</sup>start/go, Nick.

### Key Expressions: A short presentation

#### 2 Complete the presentation with the lines in the box. There are two lines that you don't need.

Okay, now let's look at heavy metal fashion.  
Some people say the lyrics are aggressive.  
We like heavy metal because the music is fast  
and loud.  
To finish, our opinion is that heavy metal is  
exciting but sometimes the lyrics are aggressive.

Well, our presentation is about heavy metal.  
They were a band from the USA.  
For example, there were bands like White Zombie  
and Danzig.  
First, we're going to say something about the  
history of heavy metal.

Nick: <sup>1</sup> Well, our presentation is about  
heavy metal.

<sup>2</sup> .....  
We also like the sound of electric guitars.

Daniel: <sup>3</sup> .....  
Well, heavy metal really started in the  
1970s. Bands like Led Zeppelin, Deep  
Purple and Black Sabbath were the most  
famous. In the late seventies, heavy  
metal was popular in many different  
countries. It was less popular in the late  
eighties and early nineties. It became  
more popular again in the late nineties  
with a change of style, sometimes called  
'alternative metal'.

Nick: <sup>4</sup> .....  
<sup>5</sup> .....  
Heavy metal fans like to show that they  
are different. Both boys and girls have  
long hair and they often wear black. They  
often wear jeans, leather jackets, big  
boots and a black T-shirt with the name  
of their favourite band. Body piercings  
have also become popular with some  
heavy metal fans.

Daniel: <sup>6</sup> .....  
We don't like all of the clothes but  
we sometimes wear T-shirts with our  
favourite band on the front.

### 3 Find and correct ten more mistakes in the presentation.

about

Elena: Our presentation is of the piano. We  
are interesting in the piano because of  
we both play it. First, we going to say  
something about the history of the piano.

Rosa: Well, the piano invented in Italy by  
Bartolomeo Cristofori of Padua in the  
early 1700s. It was used by Mozart for  
his compositions in the late 1700s. The  
design then changed and the piano  
became bigger and stronger. It become  
popular with composers in different  
countries. By example, it was used by  
composers like Haydn, Beethoven and  
Chopin.

Elena: Okay, now let look at styles of music  
played on the piano. Today, the piano is  
used in many different styles of music. It  
is very popular in either classical music  
and jazz. Some songwriters use the piano  
to write pop songs.

Rosa: To finished, our opinion is that the  
piano is an excited instrument but it is  
sometimes difficult to play.



- 4 Use the information in the table to write a presentation about the history of the electric guitar. Use the key expressions below.

<b>Invented by:</b>	Adolph Rickenbacker in the USA in the mid-1930s
<b>Used by:</b>	jazz musician Charlie Christian in the late 1930s
<b>Design changed:</b>	sound improved, became easier to play
<b>Popular with:</b>	musicians all over the world, e.g. Jimi Hendrix, Eric Clapton, Carlos Santana
<b>Styles:</b>	rock, heavy metal. Sometimes used by jazz musicians
<b>Opinion:</b>	fantastic instrument but not everyone plays well

**Key expressions**

*Well, my presentation is about ...*

*I like ... because ...*

*First, I'm going to say something about ...*

*For example, it was used by ... like ...*

*Okay, now let's look at ...*

*To finish, my opinion is that ... but ...*



**Listening**

- 5 Listen to David talking about a concert. Choose the correct answer, a, b or c.

- 1 At the jazz concert

- a the audience liked the pianist's style.  
b the audience didn't enjoy the performance.  
c the audience didn't listen to the pianist.

☒  
☐  
☐

- 2 David thought the classical concert was special because

- a they played music from different countries.  
b it's his favourite type of music.  
c his friend was playing in it.

☐  
☐  
☐

- 3 The first rock band

- a was louder than the second.  
b was quieter than the second.  
c had a lot of instruments.

☐  
☐  
☐

- 4 What was the problem with the pop band?

- a They were very young.  
b They didn't have very good voices.  
c People couldn't hear them.

☐  
☐  
☐

- 5 The rapper in StreetSound

- a had an American accent.  
b forgot his lyrics.  
c has been on TV.

☐  
☐  
☐

- 6 What instruments did Techno Time play?

- a electric guitar and synthesizer  
b synthesizer and piano  
c synthesizer and drums

☐  
☐  
☐



# Writing Challenge

1 Read the biography of Chris Martin from the band Coldplay. Match the numbers in the text (1–6) to what they refer to (a–f).

- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| 1 1977     | a the number of other members in Coldplay       |
| 2 two      | b the number of records sold                    |
| 3 mid-90s  | c the number of children Chris has got          |
| 4 three    | d the time Chris was at university              |
| 5 1998     | e the year of Chris's birth                     |
| 6 millions | f the year of an important concert for Coldplay |



Chris Martin was born on 2 March 1977 in Devon in the south-west of England. His mother was a teacher and his father was an accountant. He went to University College London to take a degree in Ancient World Studies. Chris married actress Gwyneth Paltrow in 2003. They have two children, a girl and a boy.

1While/Then Chris was at university in the mid-90s, he met the other three members of Coldplay, Will Champion, Guy Berryman and Johnny Buckland. They became friends immediately and 2ever/then Chris and Johnny began writing songs. In 1998, they played a concert at the The City Music Festival in Manchester.

3Before/After the concert, they got a record contract with a small record company to make one single, and then signed with the record company Parlophone. 4When/Finally Coldplay released their first album called *Parachutes* in 2000, it was very popular in Europe and in the USA. 5During/While the next few years, they produced another two albums, which sold millions of copies. They also went on world tours and won several awards for their music.

Chris Martin and Coldplay are important in the world of music because they write lyrics with a strong message. They also work hard to make people understand problems in the world. Chris has travelled to Ghana and Haiti to support Oxfam's campaign to make world trade fairer.

2 Read the text again and choose the correct linkers in *italics* (1–5).

3 Number the paragraphs in the biography in the correct order.

why he is important  
the more recent years

☐ family and early life  
☐ early career as a musician

☐ 1  
☐

4 Use the notes to write a biography of Bono.



Bono

Born 10 May, 1960 Dublin, Ireland

Real name - Paul Hewson

Mother died when Bono 14 years old - had strong effect on his songs

Married Alison Stewart in 1982, 4 children - 2 boys and 2 girls

October 1976 Bono joined Larry Mullen, Dave Evans (*The Edge*), his brother Dick Evans, Adam Clayton to form band. Dick Evans soon left. Had different band names, finally chose U2.

Next two years played concerts in Dublin. Released singles for small record company

March 1980 signed record contract with Island Records. Produced first four albums quickly. Next few years gave concerts all over world. Millions of fans bought albums. 1985 U2 played at Live Aid charity concert. Changed to more experimental style of music in next albums

Continued to tour and still popular in many countries

Bono important because writes strong lyrics and not afraid to change musical style

Also done a lot of work for charity and fair trade.

2005 - launched ethical clothes company with wife to promote trade in Africa, South America and India.

Bono was born on 10 May, 1960 in Dublin, Ireland. His real name is Paul Hewson. His mother ...



# Understanding Grammar: Nouns and adjectives

→ Grammar Reference, page 121

## 1 Correct the underlined mistakes.

Most young <sup>children</sup> 1childs enjoy listening to <sup>music</sup> 2musics and singing simple 3song, but music often becomes very important to teenagers. They spend their 4moneys on new CDs, expensive concert tickets and colourful 5magazine with 6informations about their favourite bands. 7Fashions and 8jewellerys are also important to different types of music. If a young 9people has spiky 10hairs, old 11jean with chains and big boots, it shows that he or she likes punk. Adults often think that these 12clothe look ridiculous, but this doesn't stop the teenagers.

## 2 Complete the sentences with the nouns in the box and the correct form of be. Make any necessary changes.

glasses trousers violence news knife  
tooth police foot aerobics potato

- Violence is a big problem in some cities.
- The ..... interviewing a man about the robbery.
- My ..... class ..... very hard. I'm always tired after it.
- I need to see a dentist. This ..... painful.
- My ..... tight. I need to lose some weight.
- ..... better for you than chips.
- The ..... about the crash ..... terrible.
- My ..... over there. Please pass them to me.
- Be careful! Those ..... sharp.
- If your ..... cold, put some socks on.

## 3 Circle the adjectives in the sentences from Exercise 1. Then write them in the table.

- Most young children enjoy listening to music and singing simple songs.
- They spend their money on new CDs, concert tickets and colourful magazines.
- Adults often think that these clothes look ridiculous but this doesn't stop the teenagers.

'Fact' adjectives:

.....  
.....  
.....

'Opinion' adjective:

.....

Noun as adjective:

.....

## 4 Complete the sentences with the pairs of words in the correct order.

rock / loud talented / young  
pop / famous old / funny  
awful / monotonous love / romantic

- He was a talented young... violinist.
- The man played a ..... guitar.
- My mum and dad like ..... songs.
- I can't stand ..... music.
- My dream is to be a ..... singer.
- The song had an ..... rhythm.

## 5 Match the sentences (1-6) in Exercise 4 with the pictures (a-f).



- 1 ☒ b 2 ☐ 3 ☐ 4 ☐ 5 ☐ 6 ☐



# Language Check 8

## Vocabulary

### 1 Write the correct words.

Example music with rappers – h i p h a p

- music with loud guitars – h \_\_\_\_\_ m \_\_\_\_\_
- an electric instrument with four strings –  
b \_\_\_\_\_ g \_\_\_\_\_
- a keyboard instrument often found in church  
– o \_\_\_\_\_
- instruments that you hit – d \_\_\_\_\_
- instruments like violins and guitars –  
s \_\_\_\_\_
- a song that is easy to remember – c \_\_\_\_\_
- music with a strong rhythm – l \_\_\_\_\_

☐ / 7

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words.

nerve monotone expense relax music  
fashion aggression power excite

Example

I was nervous before the concert.

- You need a \_\_\_\_\_ voice to sing opera.
- My sister is \_\_\_\_\_ but I can't play a note.
- I play the piano when I'm stressed. It's very \_\_\_\_\_.
- This music is very boring. Let's listen to something more \_\_\_\_\_.
- Mum won't let me listen to rap because the lyrics can be \_\_\_\_\_.
- Gold jewellery is \_\_\_\_\_ in rap culture.
- We couldn't go to the concert because the tickets were too \_\_\_\_\_.
- I went to sleep when I was listening to the CD. It was so \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ / 8

## Grammar

### 3 Choose the correct word.

Example

She's the girl who/which writes the songs.

- Do you remember *when/where* I put the tickets?
- That's the girl *whose/who* brother is a musician.
- Here's the CD *who/that* I bought for you.
- The 1970s was the time *where/when* punk started.

- Do you remember *who/whose* wrote this music?
- They play music *who/which* is really exciting.
- What's the name of the band *whose/who* drummer is a girl?
- What did you think of the boy *which/that* played the saxophone?

☐ / 8

### 4 Correct one mistake in each sentence.

Example

*hair*

Heavy metal fans often have long hairs.

- Young people is into hip hop and rap.
- Can you give me informations about the concert?
- It's important for childs to learn to read music.
- A lot of money are spent on CDs every year.
- Punks often wear jean with chains.
- The news about the pop star were on TV.
- The lead singer of the band has three ex-wifes.

☐ / 7

## Key Expressions

### 5 Complete the beginning of the presentation with these words.

about like say look because first

My presentation is about jazz. I like it

- ..... it has lots of different styles.
- ....., I'm going to 3..... something about the history of jazz. Jazz developed from blues in the southern states of America 4..... New Orleans. Let's 5..... at some of the musicians who played at this time ...

☐ / 5

### What's your score?

#### Module 8

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Vocabulary      |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Grammar         |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Key Expressions |  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> / 35 Total      |  |

This is easy.

I need more practice.

This is difficult.



## Get Ready

### Vocabulary: Reading

- 1 Complete the names of the books with the missing vowels (a, e, i, o, u).

1	a d d r e s s b o o k
2	s h o r t s t o r y
3	d i c t i o n a r y
4	p a p e r b o o k
5	n o n - f i c t i o n
6	p h o n e b o o k
7	t e l e v i s i o n
8	e n c y c l o p a e d i a

- 2 Complete the information about a bookshop with the words in the box.

literature biographies e-books comic book  
reference non-fiction online plays fiction  
paperback formats

### New Internet Bookshop – opens on Saturday

Do you like 1. *literature* ? We have a 2. ....  
section with novels, 3. .... and short stories and a  
4. .... section with books on history and  
5. .... Many books are available in hardback and  
6. ....

Do you enjoy cartoons and fantasy stories? Don't miss our  
new 7. .... section with books from all over the  
world.

Do you need help with your homework? Visit our new  
8. .... section. We have up-to-date encyclopaedias,  
dictionaries and atlases.

Do you like using technology? We have information in  
different 9. .... like CD-ROM and  
10. .... Come to our Internet café and find  
everything you need 11. ....

### Listening

- 3 Listen to Jim and Helen talking about reading. Write *Jim (J)* or *Helen (H)* next to each statement.

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1 I read comics when I was a child.      | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> H |
| 2 I only read novels in English lessons. | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| 3 I like reading online.                 | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| 4 Some websites aren't reliable.         | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| 5 You can read a book anywhere.          | <input type="checkbox"/>              |
| 6 Paper books are old-fashioned.         | <input type="checkbox"/>              |

- 4 Who do you agree with, Jim or Helen?

### Your Turn

- 5 What would you do in these situations? Tick (✓) a book/way of reading.

#### You want to:

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1 check a friend's phone number               | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| the local phonebook                           | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| my address book                               | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 check the spelling of an English word       | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| a paperback dictionary                        | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| an online dictionary                          | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 find a map of Europe                        | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| an atlas                                      | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| a website                                     | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| an encyclopaedia                              | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 read for pleasure                           | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| a novel                                       | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| an online blog                                | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 find some information for a history project | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| a website                                     | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| an encyclopaedia                              | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 read something for fun                      | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| a comic                                       | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| a short story                                 | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| a poem  | <input type="checkbox"/> |



## Vocabulary: Books and writers

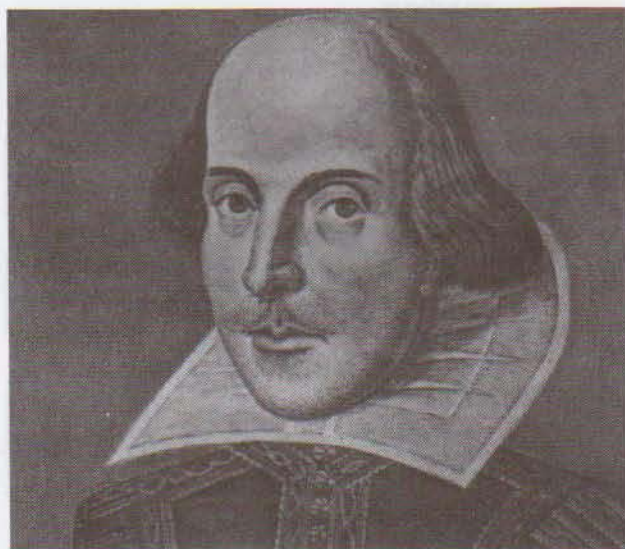
- 1 Replace the underlined words with the words in the box.

blockbusters    they received mixed reactions  
libraries    banned    copies    tell the story of

J. K. Rowling has written a series of <sup>1</sup>*very* *blockbusters* successful books which have sold millions of <sup>2</sup>books around the world. However, <sup>3</sup>not everyone liked them in some places because they <sup>4</sup>are about a young wizard. The books were even <sup>5</sup>forbidden in some schools and <sup>6</sup>places where you can borrow books in the UK and the USA.

- 2 Complete the questions with the words in the box. Then write true answers.

~~required reading list~~    public appearances  
publish    chapter    manuscript    publisher



- Which author is on the *required reading list* for literature courses in your country?
- Have you ever produced a ..... for a short story?
- What types of books would you like book companies to.....?
- What's the name of the ..... of your favourite book or magazine?
- What happens in the best ..... of your favourite book?
- Does your favourite author make.....?

## Grammar: Reported orders, requests and advice

→ Grammar Reference, page 122

- 3 Choose the correct words.

- 'Please don't take reference books home from the library.'  
The librarian *told/said* us *not to take/to take* books home from the library.
- 'Can you lend me your dictionary?'  
My classmate *asked/ordered* me to lend *them/him* my dictionary.
- 'Don't write notes in your textbooks.'  
The teacher *persuaded/ordered* us *to write/not to write* notes in our textbooks.
- 'You should read more to improve your English vocabulary.'  
My teacher *warned/advised* us *reading/to read* more to improve our English vocabulary.
- 'Join the local library.'  
Mum *want/wanted* me *join/to join* the local library.
- 'Please, please lend me your book.'  
My sister persuaded me *lend/to lend* *her/him* my book.

- 4 Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first. Use no more than three words.

- 'Don't talk in the library!' the librarian told us.  
The librarian told ..... *us not to* ..... talk in the library.
- 'Ann, please put the dictionaries back in the cupboard,' said the teacher.  
The teacher asked ..... the dictionaries back in the cupboard.
- 'You shouldn't read in bad light,' Mum said.  
Mum advised me ..... in bad light.
- 'Could you lend me your encyclopaedia?' I asked my brother.  
I asked my brother to ..... encyclopaedia.
- 'Give me your exercise books!' Mrs Clarke ordered the students.  
Mrs Clarke ordered the students ..... their exercise books.



**5** Match the reported sentences (1–4) with the cartoons (a–d). Then write what the person said. There is more than one correct answer.

- 1 My friend advised me to send the manuscript to a publisher.
- 2 Dad told me not to read online.
- 3 The boy asked the author to sign his book.
- 4 The teacher warned us not to copy from the Internet.

a



*Don't copy from the Internet.....*



.....?



.....



.....

**6** A successful author, Michelle Grant, gave a talk. Read the notes on the talk and complete the reported summary.

#### Writing a blockbuster

First need an original idea. Read lots of other books to check.

Decide on your aim – make people laugh/cry? Or a mystery story?

Decide on main character. Why is he/she different/interesting?

Warning – don't copy characters from published books.

Must plan your story.

Advice on the ending – decide what is going to happen but not too many surprises.

#### Practical advice

Don't need to write whole manuscript – just 2 or 3 chapters to send to publisher.

Ask family and friends to read a few chapters. Get an honest opinion.

First, Michelle Grant 1 *asked the students to find an original* (ask) idea and to read lots of other books. She 2 *wanted* (want) their aim – either to make people laugh or cry, or to create a mystery. She then 3 *advised* (advise) character and why he/she is different or interesting. She 4 *warned* (warn) from published books and she 5 *told* (tell) their story. She 6 *advised* (advise) what is going to happen at the end but not to have too many surprises. At the end, she 7 *told* (tell) the whole manuscript, but to send the publisher just two or three chapters. She also 8 *wanted* (want) family and friends to read a few chapters and to give an honest opinion.

#### **Your Turn**

**7** Think about the conversations you had last week. Complete the sentences.

#### **Example**

My best friend asked me *to lend her some money*.

- 1 My mum warned me .....
- 2 My teacher told me .....
- 3 My friends persuaded me .....
- 4 My teacher advised me .....
- 5 My sports teacher ordered me .....



## Vocabulary: Phrasal verbs

### 1 Match the verb (1–4) with the underlined meanings (a–d).

- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| 1 leave          | a I was <u>looking for</u> my friend at the dance last Friday.         |
| 2 entered        | b Two boys had a fight and the organiser told them to <u>get out</u> . |
| 3 approached     | c Everyone looked when the girls <u>came into</u> the club.            |
| 4 trying to find | d My girlfriend was angry when I <u>went up to</u> her best friend.    |

## Reading

### 2 Read about the people (1–4) and the books (a–f). Decide which book would be most suitable for each person.

- |   |   |  |   |
|---|---|--|---|
| 1 Dev likes reading non-fiction. He isn't very interested in history or travel books but he enjoys reading about creative people. | 2 Rita teaches English to young people and she wants a book that will help her students' own writing. Most of her students prefer fiction to non-fiction. | 3 Claire likes reading but doesn't have time to read complete novels. She doesn't like fantasy stories much and she isn't keen on biographies. | 4 Daniel often reads travel books, but he wants to try something different. He likes books that will keep him interested until the end of the book. |
|---|---|--|---|

# The Latest Publications

## a Ten Tales

The ten short stories in this collection describe one crime from the point of view of ten different characters including the criminal, the police officer and a witness. It is a clever way of linking the different people but it lacks the action and mystery of a more usual crime story.

## b The Long River

Emily King's life changed completely when she decided to give up her job and go travelling. Her journey took her to Brazil, where she travelled along the Amazon. This true-life adventure tells the story of the challenges Emily faced and the wonderful people she met.

## c Family Values

Nicholas Harris was the head of a powerful Manchester family in the early 1900s. Juliet Young tells the true story of the family, how they made a fortune and then lost it again. This fascinating story of business, family relationships, travel and adventure covers more than 100 years.

## d The Black Flower

The death of a beautiful actress presents a challenge for Inspector Hunt in this classic murder mystery. The action moves across three continents as Inspector Hunt follows the suspect. But has she got the right person? It's impossible to guess the name of the murderer until the very last page of the book!

## e A Life in Music

Frank West tells the story of the life of Jim Lee, world-famous rock guitarist. From Jim Lee's early life in a poor family in Scotland, West describes his love of American music and the problems of setting up his own first band. Lively descriptions of world tours and other well-known musicians complete this interesting biography.

## f Stories from the Stars

The twelve stories in this collection were all written by teenagers for a competition. Some of them are quite predictable science fiction stories, but others have strong characters and some real surprises. There is a short biography of each writer – some of the most interesting stories were written by the youngest writers.



### 3 Read the texts (a–f) again and find words for these definitions.

- 1 doesn't have (text a) – ..... *lacks* .....
- 2 leave (text b) – .....
- 3 a lot of money (text c) – .....
- 4 a person who might be guilty of a crime (text d) – .....
- 5 starting (text e) – .....
- 6 easy to guess what will happen (text f) – .....

### 4 Choose the correct prepositions.

#### Word Builder

- 1 Some writers were quite bad at/in English when they were at school.
- 2 My mum is fond on/of short stories.
- 3 I'm sorry about/for losing your book.
- 4 My little sister was frightened about/of the monster in the story.
- 5 I'm tired from/of reading comics.
- 6 Her new book is different from/for the last one.
- 7 My little sister is curious of/about insects.
- 8 My friend won the race. I was pleased to/for her.

### 5 Match the sentence beginnings (1–6) with the endings (a–f).

#### Sentence Builder

- 1 It was great to see the plane
  - 2 We saw two police officers
  - 3 There were thousands of film fans
  - 4 We met a musician
  - 5 I saw a beautiful yacht
  - 6 There was a photographer
- a arresting a man.  
b sailing on the water.  
c playing in the main square.  
d taking pictures of the demonstration.  
e landing at the airport.  
f waiting to meet the actress.

### 6 Look at the scene from a dream. Complete the description with the pairs of words in the box. Put the verbs in the correct form.

cat / ride musicians / play cowboy / sit  
dogs / read mum / wear teacher / juggle



I had a very strange dream last night. There was a  
1. cat riding a bike. There were also two  
2. .... comics. I saw my  
3. .... a spacesuit and doing the  
washing-up! In the dream, I met a 4. ....  
in a tree. He was afraid of the cat. I also saw my  
5. .... exercise books. Just before I woke  
up, there were two 6. .... didgeridoos. What  
does it all mean?

### Your Turn

7 Imagine the scene through the window of your bedroom or think of a dream you had. Write six sentences describing the scene.

Example

*I saw some children playing in the street.  
There was a wizard dancing with a clown.*



# 27 Communication

## Vocabulary: Fire

### 1 Match the words (1-7) with the definitions (a-g).

- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| 1 panic       | a equipment that sprays water on a fire                        |
| 2 get out     | b to escape from a building                                    |
| 3 crawl       | c a vehicle that takes people to hospital                      |
| 4 sprinklers  | d to suddenly feel very frightened                             |
| 5 flames      | e a vehicle that carries people and equipment to put out fires |
| 6 fire engine | f burning gas that comes from a fire                           |
| 7 ambulance   | g to move on your hands and knees                              |

### 2 Complete the sentences with the pairs of words in the box. Put the verbs in the correct form.

fire / start    give / a check-up    break / window  
fire alarm / go off    smell / smoke  
go down / fire escape

- The fire in the hotel last week started in the kitchen.
- Everyone ran outside when the .....
- We couldn't see any flames but we could ..... from the fire.
- Don't run. .... the ..... slowly and wait in the car park.
- The nurse ..... us a ..... after the fire and we were all fine.
- The man ..... the ..... to let the smoke out of the room.

## Useful Language

### 3 Replace the underlined words with the words in the box.

Really? Come on, I told you so. Honestly.  
That's true. Wow!

**Diane:** Our friend Ian is a hero.

**Greg:** 1Is that true? Really?

**Diane:** Yes, he helped a little boy. Are you okay after seeing that accident?

**Ian:** Yes, I'm fine. 2That's the truth.

**Diane:** The teacher said that you were very helpful. 3I want you to tell us about what happened.

**Ian:** Well, I was walking home after school. That road is always very busy with traffic.

**Greg:** 4You're right.

**Ian:** Suddenly, a little boy ran into the road in front of a bike. The boy was knocked down and he cut his head. I called the ambulance and I waited with the boy until they arrived.

**Greg:** 5I'm impressed. You didn't panic at all!

**Diane:** 6I was right, wasn't I? Ian is a hero.

## Key Expressions: Telling stories

### 4 Choose the correct words.



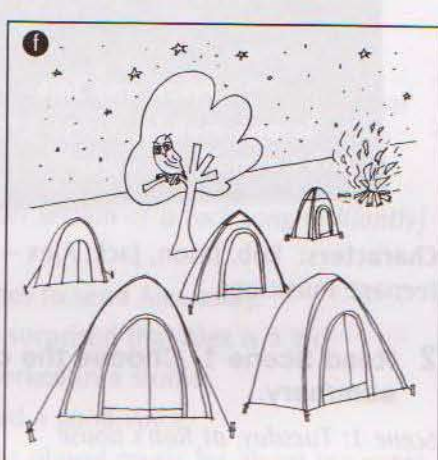
“**1While/During** we were camping on a school expedition, we lit a fire to keep us warm, but we didn't put it out properly. **2When/So** the fire started burning again, everyone was sleeping in their tents. **3By the time/Suddenly**, I woke up because I heard an owl in the trees. **4At first/Luckily**, I didn't realise the fire was still burning. Then I smelt smoke, I sat up and shouted 'Fire!' **5To begin with/Straight away** my friends thought I was joking. Stuart said, 'Stop being stupid and go to sleep.' Just **6then/when**, our teacher appeared in the tent and told us to get up quickly and quietly. **7At first/Straight away**, we got out of the tent and our teacher drove us away from the campsite. **8Luckily/Anyway**, my teacher had his mobile phone and he called the fire brigade. We were all really upset. **9In the end/Anyway**, **10by the/in** time we returned to the campsite, the fire was under control. **11As/So**, then the fire fighter gave us a really serious talk about safety. We all felt really sorry about what happened but **12finally/in the end** we learnt an important lesson.”



5 Look at Exercise 4 again. Number the pictures in the correct order.



1



## Your Turn

- 6 Think about a section of a book or film when someone was in danger. Write a summary of the story. Use at least six of the linkers in the box.

suddenly in the end  
straight away luckily  
anyway at first  
to begin with by the time  
so when just then while

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## Listening

- 7 Listen to some information about the Great Fire of London. Complete the missing information.

### THE GREAT FIRE OF LONDON

Fire started on 1...2nd..... September  
2..... in a baker's house and shop  
Possible reason Baker forgot to 3..... the fire in his oven  
Reasons that fire spread Buildings made of 4..... and straw Buildings were very close There was a strong wind  
Effect of the fire Two thirds of the city destroyed including:  
5..... houses, 87 churches and 4 bridges  
100,000 people made homeless  
After the fire An 6....., Christopher Wren, made plans to rebuild the city  
Wren's most famous building - St Paul's 7..... New buildings made from 8..... and brick



# Reading Corner 5

## Our music is rock

### 1 Read the advert. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 There will be five members in the band. ☐
- 2 They won't perform other groups' songs. ☐
- 3 The band is giving a concert on 12 May. ☐

**WANTED**

Rock guitarist/singer for new band

*We want to write our own songs*

Come to auditions at West Street Youth Club

Friday 12 May, 5.30

**Jason and Jack**

Jason's mobile: 02891 3245991

Jack's e-mail: jack.clarke@webwide.com

**Characters:** Rob, Jason, Jack, Alex – four teenage musicians

### 2 Read Scene 1. Choose the correct summary.

*Scene 1: Tuesday, at Rob's house*

- Rob:** Hi, my name's Rob. I was curious about your advert for the rock band.
- Jason:** Oh, hi Rob. Are you interested in coming to the auditions?
- Rob:** Well, yes but I'm a keyboard player.
- Jason:** Sorry, we need someone who can play either rock guitar or sing. We don't really need keyboards for our style of music.
- Rob:** Well, I also write lyrics and your advert said you want to write your own songs.
- Jason:** That's right. Well, why don't you come to the audition on Friday? We can hear one of your songs then.
- Rob:** Great, thanks. See you on Friday.
- a Jason is at home practising. Rob calls to ask about the auditions. He persuades Jason to have a keyboard player in the band. Jason agrees and invites Rob to the auditions. They agree to meet on Friday.
  - b Jason is at home practising. He calls Rob to give him information about the auditions. Rob isn't interested in being in a rock band so Jason doesn't invite him to the auditions.
  - c Jason is at home practising. Rob calls to ask about the auditions. He doesn't play the guitar or sing but he writes songs. At first Jason doesn't want to meet him but then he suggests Rob comes to the auditions.

### 3 Read Scene 2. Number the sentences in the correct order.

*Scene 2: Thursday, at Jack's house*

**To:** jack.clarke@webwide.com

**From:** alex.harper@musicmad.co.uk

Hi Jack and Jason

I saw your ad and I am the guitarist that you are looking for. I was born in New York and I started playing the guitar when I was six. I also have a good voice. I was in a band in New York and I want to start playing again.

See you on Friday.

Alex Harper

- Jack:** Wow! Look at this e-mail.
- Jason:** Brilliant! We've found the guitarist we need. I can't wait to meet him on Friday.
- Jack:** I know. Imagine it. You on the bass, Alex playing the guitar and singing, and me on drums.
- Jason:** Oh, I forgot. A guy called Rob phoned me.
- Jack:** Have you found another guitarist? That's great.
- Jason:** Er, no, he plays the keyboards but he writes songs, too. I asked him to come to the auditions.
- Jack:** Why did you do that, Jason? We don't need a keyboard player. And why didn't you ask me? This isn't *your* band, it's *our* band.
- Jason:** I'm sorry for not telling you, but Rob is coming tomorrow. Let's see what he's like.
- Jack:** Okay.
- Jason apologises. ☐
- Jack and Jason think Alex will be good for the band. ☐
- Jack and Jason receive an email. ☒
- Then he feels annoyed because Jason made a decision without him. ☐
- They agree to meet Rob the next day. ☐
- It talks about Alex's musical skills. ☐
- At first Jack is pleased. ☐
- Jason tells Jack about Rob. ☐



- 4** Look at the picture of Rob. What sort of music do you think he plays? Read Scene 3 and check.



*Scene 3: Friday, at the youth club*

**Jason:** Hello, are you Rob?

**Rob:** Yes, that's right. Nice to meet you.

**Jack:** Yes, you too. Okay, I'm the drummer in the band and Jason plays the bass.

**Rob:** Yes, I know you need a guitarist but I've written a lot of songs.

**Jason:** Okay, let's hear one.

**Rob:** 'I love you, yes, it's true  
Life is great when I'm with you  
I can't be without you for another day  
I'm so sad when you go away'

*[Jack and Jason try not to laugh]*

**Jason:** Erm, that's a really interesting song.

**Jack:** Yes, it's different. Our songs are usually loud and a bit aggressive. Why don't we call you if we need one of yours?

**Rob:** Okay, thanks.

*[Rob leaves]*

**Jack:** That song wasn't right for us, Jason.

**Jason:** I know. Much too slow and romantic.

- 5** Read Scene 3 again. Do you think Jason and Jack will ask Rob for a song? Why/Why not?

- 6** Read Scene 4. Write the correct names.

*Scene 4: A girl appears at the door*

**Jack:** Excuse me. You can't come in here. This is an audition. We're waiting for a guitarist called Alex.

**Alex:** Yeah, that's right.

**Jason:** No, Alex is a rock guitarist from New York.

**Jack:** Yes, we want him to join our band. He sounds amazing.

**Alex:** You want *her* to join your band. I'm Alex Harper and I'm here for the audition.

**Jason:** But you're a GIRL!

**Alex:** Right. Girls can play rock music, you know. Look, here's my guitar.

**Jack:** Sure, sorry. So, tell us about yourself.

**Alex:** Well, my dad was a record producer and my mom was a singer. When I was five, I went to the studio and I picked up an electric guitar. Straight away I was hooked. I had some lessons and by the time I was ten, I could play really well. After that, I formed my own band. We played gigs and we even made a CD. But we came to England last year when I was sixteen and I haven't found a band yet.

**Jason:** Wow! That's amazing. You're much more experienced than us. We're both fifteen. I started when I was thirteen and Jack when he was fourteen.

**Alex:** Don't worry. If we work hard, we can make a good band. Do you want to hear me play?

**Jason:** Yes, go for it.

*[Alex plays a short section of a rock song brilliantly]*

- 1 Jack tries to send Alex away.
- 2 ..... is surprised that Alex is a girl.
- 3 ..... worked in a studio.
- 4 ..... had a good voice.
- 5 ..... has played music for about ten years.
- 6 ..... has played music for about two years.

- 7** Read Scene 4 again. Find words for these definitions.

- 1 please do it .....
- 2 created .....
- 3 concerts .....
- 4 loved it immediately .....





# Language Check 9

## Vocabulary

- 1 Complete the sentences with these words.

paperbacks atlas online novels  
CD-ROMs phonebook e-books poetry

Example *Paperbacks* are cheaper than hardbacks.

- I can't remember my friend's number. Pass me the \_\_\_\_\_, please.
- I don't use books. I get most of my information \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you need a map, look at the \_\_\_\_\_.
- I like \_\_\_\_\_ – they hold a lot of information and they are easy to use.
- I never read non-fiction. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ and short stories.
- I think \_\_\_\_\_ that you can download will be very popular.
- Not all \_\_\_\_\_ rhymes.

☐ / 7

- 2 Match the sentences beginnings (1–8) with the endings (a–h).

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 Are you afraid       | a with his new car?    |
| 2 Don't be worried     | b from her sister.     |
| 3 Is he happy          | c about your exams.    |
| 4 I'm tired            | d in literature.       |
| 5 She's very different | e of spiders?          |
| 6 I'm sorry            | f for you.             |
| 7 I'm not interested   | g of reading poetry.   |
| 8 I'm so pleased       | h for losing your pen. |

☐ / 7

## Grammar

- 3 Correct the underlined mistakes.

Example

My mum asked me to wash the car.

- My friend advised me to not smoke.
- The driver warned us not be late.
- Dad told we to tidy our room.
- The teacher ordered to the class to be quiet.
- My friend want me to stay out late last night.
- I asked she to help me.

☐ / 6

- 4 Report the sentences. Choose the most suitable verb in brackets.

Example

'Go home now!' said the police officer to the boy. (order / ask)

*The police officer ordered the boy to go home.*

- 'Please, please help me with my homework,' my sister said to me. (warn / persuade)
- 'You should train twice a week,' the coach said to Jo. (advise / order)
- 'Don't expect to earn a lot of money,' the writer said to the group. (warn / tell)
- 'Don't use my computer!' my brother said to me. (tell / ask)
- 'Can you open the window, please?' the teacher said to Sarah. (order / ask)

☐ / 10

## Key Expressions

- 5 Complete the story with the phrases in the box.

at first just then when in the end  
suddenly while

It was my birthday last week. I didn't get any cards or presents. *At first*, I thought, 'Everyone has forgotten my birthday,' and I felt upset. 1..... I was sitting in my bedroom, my mum called me into the sitting room. Everything was dark and then 2..... the lights went on and everyone shouted, 'Surprise!' 3..... I saw a big party with all my friends, I couldn't believe it. 4..... my mum gave me the iPod I wanted, I was so happy. We all had a great time at the party and 5..... it was the best birthday ever.

☐ / 5

## What's your score?

### Module 9

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Vocabulary      | ☹ |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Grammar         | ☹ |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Key Expressions | ☹ |
| <input type="checkbox"/> / 35 Total      |   |

This is easy. 😊

I need more practice. 😐

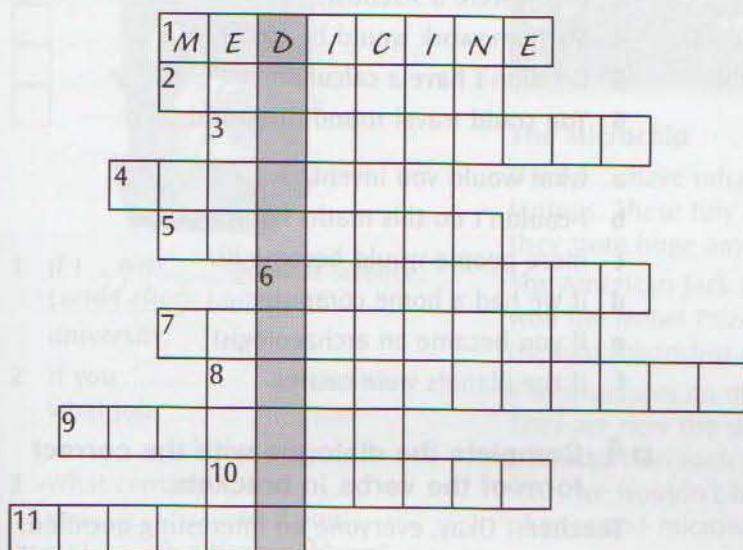
This is difficult. ☹



## Get Ready

### Vocabulary: Science

1 Complete the puzzle. Find the mystery word.



- 1 Doctors study ...
- 2 Zoology is the study of ...
- 3 ... is the study of stars and planets.
- 4 The falcon is a ... of bird.
- 5 ... is the study of living things.
- 6 ... give protection from diseases.
- 7 ... is the study of the structure of things in the universe.
- 8 ... is the study of the past by finding things in the ground.
- 9 ... is the study of light, heat, movement, etc.
- 10 ... is the study of rocks.
- 11 Botany is the study of ...

2 Make personal nouns from the word in the box and complete the sentences.

botany archaeology astronomy  
biology zoology chemistry

1 My brother is studying to be a *botanist*.  
He knows a lot about plants.

- 2 It's interesting to be an ..... and discover things about the past.
- 3 I'm fascinated by stars and planets. I'd love to be an .....
- 4 A ..... is interested in all living things.
- 5 If you're interested in animals, why don't you become a .....?
- 6 Marie Curie was a famous Polish .....

### Listening

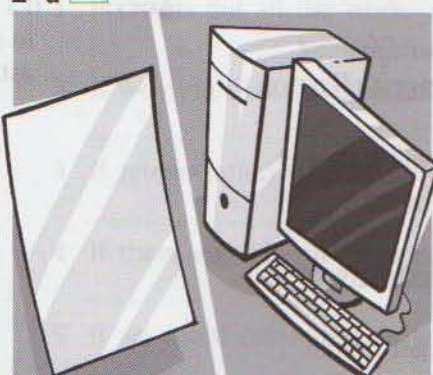
3 Listen to three people talking about important discoveries. Choose the correct picture, a or b.

1 a ☐



b ☐

2 a ☐



b ☐

3 a ☐



b ☐



## Vocabulary: Inventions

### 1 Match the verbs (1–8) with the nouns (a–h).

- |              |                         |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| 1 die of     | a foreign lands         |
| 2 lose       | b contact               |
| 3 remove     | c clean water           |
| 4 bring      | d in time               |
| 5 get rid of | e infectious diseases   |
| 6 save       | f cancer, AIDS, and flu |
| 7 travel     | g energy                |
| 8 get to     | h sewage                |

### 2 Replace the underlined words with the words in the box. Then write true answers.

influenced your life most  
in a split second DNA research  
become reality machines



*influenced your life most*

- Which invention has had the strongest effect on your life?
- When do you think teleportation will happen?
- How do you think studies on the human genome will help people?
- How many things that work on electricity do you use every day?
- Where would you go if you could get there very quickly?

## Grammar: Unreal conditionals

→ Grammar Reference, page 124

### 3 Match the sentence beginnings (1–6) with the endings (a–f).

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 If we didn't have vaccines,      | a what would you invent?             |
| 2 People could travel in space     | b I couldn't do this maths homework. |
| 3 If you were a scientist,         | c more people would become ill.      |
| 4 My homework would be easier      | d if we had a home computer.         |
| 5 If I didn't have a calculator,   | e if you became an archaeologist.    |
| 6 You could travel round the world | f if the planets were nearer.        |

### 4 Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

**Teacher:** Okay, everyone an interesting question: What 1. *would* you *do* (do) if you 2. (be) a scientist?

**Marek:** Well, if I 3. (can) work in medicine, I 4. (develop) a vaccine for AIDS.

**Teacher:** Okay. And you, Kate?

**Kate:** Well, if I 5. (have) a job in science, I 6. (work) with animals. I would like to do research into dolphins.

**Teacher:** Very interesting. Adam, what would you do?

**Adam:** I'm mad about computers. If I 7. (work) for an IT company, I 8. (design) a computer that you can use under water.

**Teacher:** Very useful. How about you Lucy?

**Lucy:** If I 9. (can) choose to work in science, I 10. (be) an astronomer. I'd look for a new star.



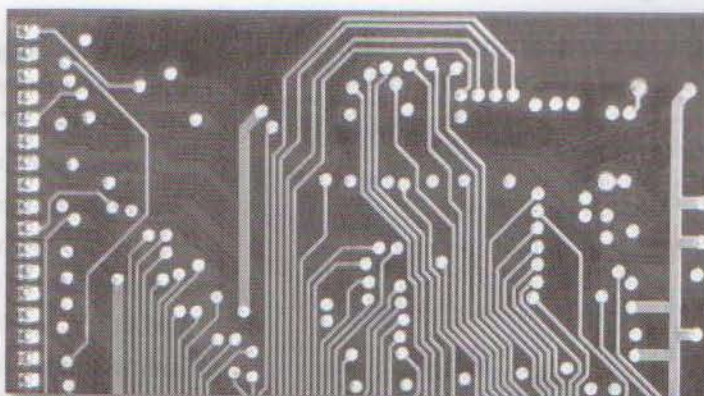
- 5 Complete the sentences with the pairs of verbs in the box.

lose / not can    be / can study  
be / not have    travel / have  
not have / not can  
not be / do



- If I was good at science, I could study biology at university.
- If you ..... a botanist, what job ..... you ..... ?
- What century ..... you ..... to if you ..... a time machine?
- What ..... life ..... like if we ..... clean running water?
- If I ..... my mobile phone, I ..... contact any of my friends.
- If we ..... electricity, we ..... use TVs and other machines.

- 6 Choose the correct words to complete the text, a, b, c or d.



### The Microchip

If we 1... have microchips, we 2... have calculators, computers or laptops. These tiny chips are also called 'integrated circuits' and they store huge amounts of 3...

The American Jack Kilby is considered the 4... of the microchip. He won the Nobel Prize for 5... in the year 2000 but actually created the first microchip as early as 1958.

The structures on microchips have become smaller and smaller. They are now the size of atoms. There are almost a billion transistors on each square centimetre. If this technology didn't 6..., we wouldn't be 7... to use everyday objects like mobile phones and microwave ovens.

- |                  |             |               |                  |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1 a wouldn't     | b hasn't    | c don't       | <b>d) didn't</b> |
| 2 a don't        | b wouldn't  | c won't       | d would          |
| 3 a informations | b inform    | c information | d informs        |
| 4 a inventor     | b inventive | c invention   | d inventing      |
| 5 a Physicist    | b Physical  | c Physics     | d Physically     |
| 6 a exists       | b existing  | c existed     | d exist          |
| 7 a can          | b able      | c could       | d would          |

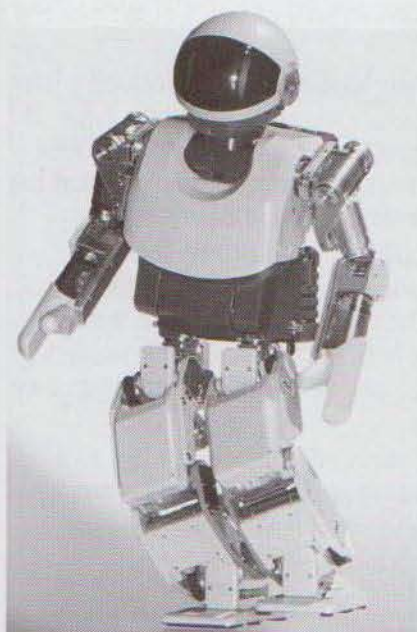
### Your Turn

- 7 Write a positive and a negative result for each sentence.

Example

If time travel was possible, people could meet characters from the past. / people from the past wouldn't understand us

- If robots did all the work, .....
- If we didn't have the Internet, .....
- If teleportation was possible, .....
- If there was life on other planets, .....
- If we could communicate with animals, .....





# Vocabulary: Animals

- 1 Write the names of the animals in the correct place in the table.

crocodile dinosaur elephant  
giant sloth guinea pig hamster  
horse lizard mammoth  
rhinoceros sabre-toothed tiger  
whale wolf

used in sport:	horse.....
now extinct:	g..... s..... m..... d.....
can be pets:	h..... g..... l.....
lives in the sea:	w.....
safari animals:	c..... e..... r.....
a relation of the dog:	w.....

- 2 Choose the correct words.

- 1 Argentinosaurus was about 21 metres tall. This giant dominant dinosaur was found in South America.
- 2 Some dinosaurs *evolved*/dominated into modern animals.
- 3 Scientists study *fossils*/mammals to find out about the animals of the past.
- 4 Marine crocodiles *discovered*/developed from dinosaurs.
- 5 Scientists don't know exactly why dinosaurs died *up*/out.
- 6 When dinosaurs became extinct, mammals *made*/took control.
- 7 The *body*/bones of Giganotosaurus, a huge meat-eater, were discovered in Argentina.
- 8 Meat-eating dinosaurs *hunted*/hid plant-eaters for food.

# Reading

- 3 Read the statements about an area of fossils in the USA. Read the text and decide if they are correct (C) or incorrect (I).

- 1 The volcano killed all the animals immediately.
- 2 The animals died because they couldn't eat.
- 3 The bodies of the animals became buried in the ash.
- 4 The position of the animals has changed over time.
- 5 Ashfall has fossils of animals and plant life.
- 6 Scientists have found more examples of horses than any other animal.
- 7 Scientists are continuing to find fossils at Ashfall.
- 8 You can't visit Ashfall during the winter.

/

## Ashfall Fossil Site

- 1 About 12 million years ago, a volcano erupted in southwest Idaho. It spread a thick layer of ash over a very large area. Most of the animals in the area survived the volcano, but as they ate the grass, their lungs began to fill up with the ash. Soon their lungs became badly damaged and they began to die.
- 2 The smaller animals died first and after perhaps three to five weeks, the last of the larger mammals could no longer survive. Their bodies were quickly covered by the ash, which was blowing and moving across the area.
- 3 The bodies were not moved over the years that followed and so the skeletons of these animals were preserved in their final positions. Some of them still have their last meal in their mouth and stomach, and their last steps are preserved in the stone.
- 4 In 1971, Mike Voorhies, a paleontologist who studies fossil animals with backbones, found the complete skeleton of a rhino in an ancient water hole. It was one of hundreds of skeletons at the Ashfall Fossil Site. These include large mammals, birds, and turtles, as well as seeds of grasses and trees.
- 5 Twelve species of mammals have been found including five species of horse, three species of camel, and three types of dog. The most common species is teleoceros major, a type of rhino. There are so many skeletons of this animal that the main part of Ashfall is called the 'Rhino Barn'.
- 6 Ashfall opened to the public on 1 June 1991. There is a Visitor Centre with information displays and a fossil preparation laboratory. Each summer, visitors can watch palaeontologists at work in the Rhino Barn, which covers a section of the fossil bed. New fossils are left exactly as they were found.
- 7 Ashfall is open between May and October. For days and times, please see the website or call the Visitor Centre. School and tour groups can make advance reservations between 1 April and 20 October.



- 4 Read the text again and find words for these definitions.

### Paragraph

- 1 exploded and flew out fire, ash and smoke  
– *erupted*
- 2 continue to live – .....
- 3 a framework of bones – .....  
not changed, kept in good condition – .....
- 4 a scientist who studies fossils – .....
- 5 existing in large numbers – .....
- 6 people in general – .....
- 7 before a particular time – .....

- 5 Complete the texts with nouns from the words in brackets.

### Word Builder

1 *Scientists* (science) found the largest and best preserved Tyrannosaurus rex skeleton, 'Sue', in South Dakota in 1990. The 2..... (explore) was lead by Sue Hendrickson and the dinosaur was named after her. The skeleton dates from the 3..... (extinct) of the dinosaurs around 67 million years ago. 'Sue' is also of 4..... (important) because she's the most expensive fossil in the world. Sue was sold to Chicago Field Museum for \$8,362,500, which is a world record.

There was a big 5..... (celebrate) in the art world when a new painting by Picasso was discovered in 2006. A New York gallery made 6..... (prepare) to display the painting as part of an exhibition. Then suddenly an art expert produced 7..... (evident) that the painting was a fake. 'At first, I couldn't see any 8..... (different) in the style, but then I realised that it couldn't be a Picasso,' she said. A few weeks later a teenager in Spain admitted that he had done the painting as a joke.

In February 2006, an important 9..... (discover) was made in Egypt's Valley of the Kings. 10..... (archaeology) found a new tomb about 14 metres from the tomb of the famous Tutankhamen. 11..... (inform) about the new tomb (called KV 63) is being shown on Discovery Channel, a documentary TV channel.

- 6 One of the stories in Exercise 5 isn't true. Which one?

- 7 Write the words in the correct order.

### Sentence Builder

- 1 a getting warmer the Earth is bit  
*The Earth is getting a bit warmer*
- 2 cat smaller much tiger the is a  
relation the of .....
- 3 their lot have humans got a taller  
in evolution .....
- 4 rhinoceros than even the is elephant  
heavier the .....
- 5 are the fossils of mammals much than  
older the fossils of dinosaurs .....
- 6 than even more the animal world the  
plant world is varied .....

### Your Turn

- 8 Complete the sentences for you. Use the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1 My biggest ..... (achieve) is .....
- 2 The ..... (evolve) of humans will make us ..... in the future.
- 3 I think the most important ..... (discover) in the world is .....
- 4 I would like to invent ..... (equip) to help people .....
- 5 I think the ..... (disappear) of the dinosaurs happened because of .....

- 9 Write true comparisons.

- 1 much taller  
*much taller than my best friend*
- 2 even more expensive .....
- 3 a bit better .....
- 4 much older .....
- 5 a lot more difficult .....



# 30 Communication

## Useful Language

### 1 Choose the correct words.

Kelly: Is <sup>1</sup>everything/all okay after your accident?

Mark: Yes, thanks <sup>2</sup>for/to the girl who saw the crash.

Kelly: Why?

Mark: Well, her mum is a doctor, <sup>3</sup>actually/really, so she knew exactly what to do.

Kelly: It's <sup>4</sup>luck/lucky she was there.

Mark: You're right. It's also good in another way ...

Kelly: Why? What? Come on, don't <sup>5</sup>put/keep me in suspense!

Mark: Well, she gave me her mobile number while I was in hospital. We're going out together next weekend.

Kelly: That's brilliant!

Mum: Harry. There's a letter for you.

Harry: <sup>6</sup>I'm/I've in a bit of a hurry. I'll open it later.

Mum: But the letter is about that competition you entered.

Harry: Mm, <sup>7</sup>hears/sounds interesting.

Mum: (*Gives Harry the letter.*) I hope you've won.

Harry: I hope <sup>8</sup>so/it, too. (*Opens the letter.*) I don't believe <sup>9</sup>me/it! I've won first prize – a new computer!

Mum: That's brilliant. And you said, 'I never win anything.'

Harry: Well, I <sup>10</sup>was/had wrong about that. From now on, I'm going to enter every competition that I can.

## Your Turn

### 2 Choose expressions from Exercise 1 for these situations. Make any necessary changes.

1 A girl you didn't like helped you a lot.

*I was wrong about her.*

2 Your friend won't tell you about his first date with a new girlfriend.

3 At first, you thought a book was boring but then you really enjoyed it.

4 You saw a fire coming from a shop and you called the fire brigade.

5 You hear some really surprising news.

6 You want to check your friend is all right after an operation.

7 You are curious about a new youth club.

8 Your parents really want to hear your exam results.

## Key Expressions:

### Offers and requests

### 3 Complete dialogues 1 and 2 with the lines in the box.

Can you do me a favour?

I'm going to miss computer club this week.

Shall I take notes for you, too?

Yes, please.

Okay, I'll do that. Which subject?

Don't worry. I'll get them from the website.

Sure.

I'd like you to help me with my homework.

Chemistry – I'm hopeless at it.

Would you like me to tell the tutor?

### Dialogue 1

A: *Can you do me a favour?*

B: .....

A: .....

B: .....

A: .....

### Dialogue 2

A: *I'm going to miss computer club this week.*

B: .....

A: .....

B: .....

A: .....



#### 4 Find and correct eight more mistakes in the dialogues.

A: Can you <sup>do</sup> make me a favour?

B: Of sure.

A: I like you to help me design the school magazine.

B: Okay, I do that.

A: I got a headache.

B: Do you like me to get you an aspirin?

A: No, please.

B: Shall I to get you some water, too?

A: Thank you.

B: No at all.

#### Your Turn

#### 5 Write the dialogues for these situations.

- 1 You want your friend to take your dog for a walk. He/She agrees.
- 2 Your friend doesn't feel very well at school. You offer to tell your teacher. Then you offer to take him/her to the school nurse. He/She says yes to both offers.

### Listening

#### 6 Listen to four short recordings. Choose the correct picture, a, b or c.

- 1 Which invention does the man think is most important?



a ☐

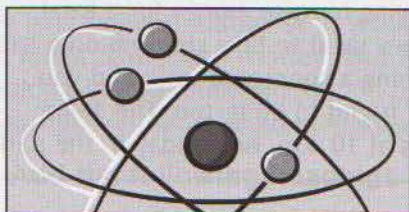


b ☐



c ☐

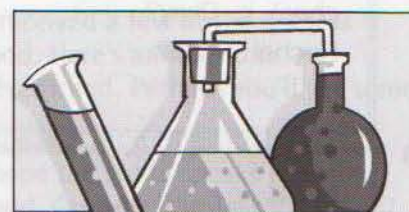
- 2 Which science is the boy interested in?



a ☐



b ☐



c ☐

- 3 What does the girl ask the boy to do?



a ☐



b ☐



c ☐

- 4 How does the boy help his grandmother?



a ☐



b ☐



c ☐



# Writing Challenge

1 Read the e-mails (1–4). Which message do these lines come from?

- a Why don't you ask Jodie? ☒
- b My dad can come in the car to collect it from your house. ☐
- c Can you do me a favour? ☐
- d E-mail the attachment and I'll print it out later for you. ☐

1

Hi Rachel

..... I'd like to use your printer  
<sup>1</sup>so/~~to~~ print out my project. Mine  
 isn't working at the moment. I could  
 come round tomorrow after school  
 with the project on disc or I can  
 e-mail it to you.

Thanks a lot  
 Simon

2

Hi Si

Sure, that's no problem. But don't  
 come round tomorrow afternoon  
<sup>2</sup>because/so that I've got basketball  
 practice then. ..... I'll bring  
 round a copy <sup>3</sup>so that/to you can  
 check it. Okay?

Rachel

3

Hi Liz

I'm going camping with my youth club  
 next week. We haven't got a tent  
<sup>4</sup>so/to can I borrow yours? The ones  
 in the shops are really expensive.  
 ..... Will you be there on  
 Saturday?

Thanks  
 Oliver

4

Hi Ollie

Sorry, but my brother is going on  
 the same trip, <sup>5</sup>so/because he  
 needs the tent. .... She goes  
 camping a lot but she won't need  
hers <sup>6</sup>so that/because she's going  
 sailing.

Good luck!

Liz

2 Read the e-mails again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Rachel hasn't got a printer. ☒
- 2 Simon is going to take a copy of Rachel's project to her house. ☐
- 3 Oliver can't afford a new tent. ☐
- 4 Liz is going to take the tent to Oliver's house. ☐
- 5 Liz's brother is going on the youth club trip. ☐

3 Circle the correct linkers in *italics* (1–6) in the e-mails.

4 What do the underlined words in the e-mails refer to?

E-mail:

- 1 Mine – my printer, it – .....
- 2 that – ....., then – ....., it – .....
- 3 yours – ....., ones – ....., there – .....
- 4 he – ....., She – ....., hers – .....

5 Read the situation. Write an e-mail to your friend.

You are trying to raise money for a local charity. They want to take children on a trip. You are doing a sponsored walk and you want your friend to do it, too. The 10km walk starts at 10 a.m. on Sunday in the park.

- Ask him/her the favour
- Give reasons
- Say where/when to meet

Hi .....

Can you ...



# Understanding Grammar: *a lot of/lots of, much/many, a little/little, a few/few*

→ Grammar Reference, page 125

- 1 Read the interview with an archaeologist. Choose the correct/more usual words.**

## How did you become interested in archaeology?

I've always enjoyed history. Then one year there was a dig in my home town of York. They wanted volunteers to work on a Roman site. <sup>1</sup>~~A few~~ A little friends and I joined the dig and I loved every minute.

## What did you find on the first dig?

We found <sup>2</sup>~~many~~ a lot of pieces of pottery and a few animal bones. There wasn't <sup>3</sup>~~much~~ many evidence of human life there. But then on a different part of the site, there were <sup>4</sup>~~lot of~~ lots of interesting things – Roman coins, a knife and <sup>5</sup>~~much~~ lots of jewellery.

## What sort of person can become an archaeologist?

You need to have an interest in the past. You also need <sup>6</sup>~~a lot of~~ much patience. You can't work on big, famous digs all the time. <sup>7</sup>~~Very few~~ Very little archaeologists discover a completely new site like Pompeii, for example. You also need to travel if your area doesn't have <sup>8</sup>~~many~~ much archaeological sites.

## What's the worst thing about your job?

I work on Roman sites and I have <sup>9</sup>~~very little~~ very few time to find out about other aspects of archaeology. That's a shame because it's a fascinating subject. The pay isn't brilliant either, so it would be good to have <sup>10</sup>~~a few~~ a little more money. But it's a great life and I wouldn't like to change jobs.

- 2 Add the following headings to the table.**

- + plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns
- + plural countable nouns
- + uncountable nouns

.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
many	much	a lot of
a few	a little	lots of
very few	very little	

- 3 Cross out words that aren't possible/usual.**

- 1 Were there *many/much/a lot of* people at the exhibition?
- 2 They didn't find *many/a few/much* objects at the dig.
- 3 *Few/Very few/Little* students joined the archaeology club.
- 4 There was *very little/few/a little* interest in the dig.
- 5 Dinosaur bones are found in *little/lots of/many sites* around the world.
- 6 There are *a lot of/many/lots of* universities with archaeology courses.

- 4 Correct the underlined mistakes.**

- 1 There is <sup>a lot of</sup> ~~many~~ interest in archaeology and the prehistoric world.
- 2 Little students study archaeology.
- 3 A lots of people became interested in dinosaurs after seeing *Jurassic Park*.
- 4 Were there much volunteers at the dig?
- 5 I found a little fossils on the beach.
- 6 Are there much archaeological sites in your country?

- 5 Choose the most appropriate response, a or b.**

- 1 We've got a little time before our train.  
a Okay. We need to hurry to the station.  
b Good. Let's have a drink at the café.
- 2 Few students entered the competition.  
a That's worrying. Was it too difficult?  
b Well, I hope one of them wins.
- 3 There was little damage after the storm.  
a What was broken?  
b That's good news. We don't want to pay for a lot of repairs.
- 4 I've received a few birthday cards.  
a Good. Here's another one.  
b Never mind. Perhaps you'll get some later.
- 5 We speak a little Hungarian.  
a I hope the guide speaks English.  
b Good. Can you translate the menu?
- 6 Few tourists come to this town.  
a Why? Is it a bit boring?  
b Really? Where do they go?

- 6 Complete the sentences about your town.**

- 1 There is a lot of .....
- 2 There are lots of .....
- 3 There isn't much .....
- 4 There aren't many .....
- 5 There is a little .....
- 6 There are a few .....



# Language Check 10

## Vocabulary

### 1 Look at the key words and write the correct science.

Example fossils / buried *archaeology*

- plants / seeds .....
- vaccines / tablets .....
- rocks / stones .....
- light / movement .....
- planets / telescope .....

☐ / 5

### 2 Find the odd one out.

Example dinosaur sabre-toothed tiger whale

- mammoth elephant crocodile
- crocodile hamster guinea pig
- rhinoceros lizard elephant
- elephant wolf horse
- wolf dog giant sloth

☐ / 5

### 3 Complete the text with the correct form of these words.

discover important science explore  
mysterious evident

In 1940, four French teenagers made an important *discovery* in the Dordogne area. They found a cave full of prehistoric paintings which give 1..... of the animals alive thousands of years ago. The exact date of the paintings is still a 2..... but they are of great 3..... because they are very early examples of art. The 4..... of the cave revealed hundreds of images including horses, bison and bears. 5..... now monitor the paintings to keep them in good condition.

☐ / 5

## Grammar

### 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Example If you *could* (can) invent a gadget, what *would* it *be* (be)?

- What ..... we ..... (do) if we ..... (not have) electricity?

- If you ..... (can) meet a scientist, who ..... you ..... (choose)?
- ..... you ..... (study) archaeology if you ..... (can)?
- If you ..... (lose) your mobile phone, ..... (can) you live without it?
- If e-mail ..... (not exist), communication ..... (be) a lot slower.

☐ / 10

### 5 Choose the correct/more usual words.

Example There are many a lot of websites to check.

- The site was very disappointing. There were *few*/a *few* interesting objects.
- This computer uses only *a little*/a *few* electricity.
- A lot of*/Many machines contain microchips.
- The discovery created *a lot of*/many interest.
- Very *few*/little people have travelled in space.

☐ / 5

## Key Expressions

### 6 Complete the dialogue with these words.




can favour do like would shall


- A: *Can* you do me a 1.....? I'd 2..... you to look after my brother.
- B: Okay, I'll 3..... that. 4..... I take him to the park?
- A: Great idea, thanks.
- B: And 5..... you like me to give him lunch?
- A: Yes, please.


☐ / 5


## What's your score?

### Module 10

- ☐ Vocabulary 
- ☐ Grammar 
- ☐ Key Expressions 
- ☐ / 30 Total

This is easy. 

I need more practice. 

This is difficult. 



# Wordlist

## Module 1

### School facilities

art room	n phr	/'ɑ:t ru:m, rum/
computer room	n phr	/kəm'pjʊ:tə ,ru:m, ,rum/
dance studio	n phr	/'dɑ:ns ,stju:diəʊ/
gymnasium	n	/dʒɪm'neɪziəm/
hockey pitch	n	/'hɒki pɪtʃ/
indoor	adj	/'ɪndəʊ/
outdoor	adj	/'aʊtɔ:ʊ/
swimming pool	colloc	/'swɪmɪŋ pu:l/
language laboratory	n	/'læŋgweɪdʒ lə,bɒrətɪ/
library	n	/'laɪbrəri, -brɪ/
music room	n phr	/'mju:zɪk ,ru:m, ,rum/
recording studio	n phr	/'rɪ:kɔ:dɪŋ ,stju:diəʊ/
science laboratory	n phr	/'saɪəns lə,bɒrətɪ/
stage	n	/'steɪdʒ/
tennis court	n phr	/'tenɪs kɔ:t/
theatre	n	/'θiətə/

### After-school clubs

art club	n	/'ɑ:t klʌb/
baseball	n	/'beɪsbɔ:l/
chess	n	/'tʃes/
computer	n	/kəm'pjʊ:tə/
cookery	n	/'kʊkəri/
creative writing	n phr	/'kri:etɪv 'raɪtɪŋ/
dance	n	/'dɑ:ns/
drama	n	/'drɑ:mə/
foreign language	n phr	/'fɔ:rən 'læŋgweɪdʒ/
judo	n	/'dʒu:dəʊ/
music	n	/'mju:zɪk/
photography	n	/'fə'tɒgrəfi/
swimming	n	/'swɪmɪŋ/
table tennis	n phr	/'teɪbəl ,tenɪs/

### Extra words

day school	n phr	/'deɪ sku:l/
do music practice	v phr	/,du: 'mju:zɪk ,præktɪs/
exchange ideas	v phr	/ɪks,tʃeɪndʒ aɪ'dɪəz/
home education	n phr	/'həʊm edʒu,'keɪʃən/
home-educated	adj	/'həʊm 'edʒuketɪd/
lonely	adj	/'ləʊnli/
offer	v	/'ɒfə/
strict	adj	/'strikt/
tutor	n	/'tju:tə/

## Module 2

### Abilities

artistic	adj	/'ɑ:tɪstɪk/
athletic	adj	/æθ'letɪk, əθ-/
creative	adj	/'kri:etɪv/
imaginative	adj	/'ɪmædʒənətɪv/
logical	adj	/'lɒdʒɪkəl/
musical	adj	/'mju:zɪkəl/
practical	adj	/'præktɪkəl/
talented	adj	/'tæləntɪd/
be good at	adj phr	/'bi 'ɡʊd ət, æt/
be brilliant at	adj phr	/'bi 'brɪljənt ət, æt/
communicating	n	/kə'mju:nɪkeɪtɪŋ/
gymnastics	n	/dʒɪm'næstɪks/
making things	n	/'meɪkɪŋ ,θɪŋz/
maths	n	/mæθs/
painting	n	/'peɪntɪŋ/
science	n	/'saɪəns/
singing	n	/'sɪŋɪŋ/
sport	n	/'spɔ:t/
writing	n	/'raɪtɪŋ/

### Extra words

do escape tricks	v phr	/,du: rɪ'skeɪp ,trɪks/
rehearsal	n	/'rɪ'hɜ:səl/

## Module 3

### Health (1)

acupuncture	n	/'ækjʊ,pʌŋktʃə/
allergy	n	/'ælədʒi/
antibiotics	n	/'æntɪbaɪ'ɒtɪks/
cold	n	/kəʊld/
flu	n	/'flu:/
headache	n	/'hedeɪk/
herbal remedy	n phr	/'hɜ:bəl 'remədi/
insomnia	n	/'ɪn'sɒmniə/
being overweight	adj phr	/'bi:ɪŋ əʊvə'weɪt/
painkiller	n	/'peɪn,kɪlə/
sports injury	n	/'spɔ:ts ,ɪndʒəri/
stress	n	/'stres/
tiredness	n	/'taɪədnes/
vaccination	n	/'væksə'neɪʃən/

### Diseases

AIDS	n	/eɪdz/
chicken pox	n phr	/'tʃɪkən ,pɒks/
cholera	n	/'kɒlərə/
malaria	n	/mə'leəriə/
measles	n	/'mi:zəlz/
mumps	n	/'mʌmps/
plague	n	/'pleɪg/
polio	n	/'pəʊliəʊ/
rabies	n	/'reɪbi:z/
smallpox	n	/'smɔ:l'pɒks/
tuberculosis	n	/'tju:,bɜ:kju:'ləʊsɪs/
whooping cough	n phr	/'hu:pɪŋ ,kɒf/

### Health (2)

cough	n	/kɒf/
earache	n	/'ɪərəɪk/
headache	n	/'hedeɪk/
high temperature	n phr	/'haɪ 'temprətʃə/
pain	n	/'peɪn/
runny nose	n phr	/'rʌni 'nəʊz/
sneezing	n	/'sni:zɪŋ/
sore throat	n phr	/'sɔ: 'θrəʊt/
toothache	n	/'tu:θeɪk/
have an x-ray	v phr	/'hæv ən 'eks reɪ/
stay in bed	v phr	/'steɪ ɪn 'bed/
take cough mixture	v phr	/'teɪk 'kɒf ,mɪkstʃə/
take medicine	v phr	/'teɪk 'medsən/
take tablets	v phr	/'teɪk 'tæbləts/

### Food

beef	n	/'bi:f/
cabbage	n	/'kæbɪdʒ/
chicken	n	/'tʃɪkən/
garlic	n	/'gɑ:ɪlɪk/
kiwi	n	/'ki:wi:/
lamb	n	/læm/
mango	n	/'mæŋgəʊ/
onion	n	/'ʌnjən/
peach	n	/'pi:tʃ/
peas	n	/'pi:z/
salmon	n	/'sæmən/
sardines	n	/'sɑ:'di:nz/
strawberries	n	/'strɔ:bərɪz/
trout	n	/'traʊt/
tuna	n	/'tju:nə/



### Extra words

blood group	n phr	/'bləd gru:p/
depression	n	/di'preʃən/
dice	n pl	/daɪs/
drug company	n phr	/'drʌg ,kʌmpəni/
fluoride	n	/'fluɔraɪd/
handkerchief	n	/'hæŋkətʃɪf/
pack of cards	n phr	/.pæk əv 'kɑ:dz/
protect	v	/pra'tekt/
routine	n	/ru:'ti:n/
top hat	n phr	/.tɒp 'hæt/
vitamin	n	/'vɪtəmin/
volunteer	n	/.vɒləntiə/
wand	n	/'wɒnd/

## Module 4

### Cities

bike lane	n phr	/'baɪk leɪn/
crime	n	/'kraɪm/
exhibition	n	/.eksə'biʃən/
graffiti	n	/'græ'fi:ti/
Internet café	n phr	/.ɪntənət 'kæfeɪ/
litter	n uncount	/'lɪtə/
multi-screen cinema	n phr	/.mʌltɪskri:n 'sɪnəmə/
nightlife	n	/'naɪtlaɪf/
pedestrian area	n phr	/'peðstriən ,eəriə/
rock concert	n phr	/'rɒk ,kɒnsət/
shopping mall	n phr	/'ʃɒpɪŋ ,mɔ:l/
skateboard park	n phr	/'skeɪtbɔ:d ,pɑ:k/
sporting event	n phr	/'spɔ:tɪŋ ɪ,vent/
cultural event	n phr	/'kʌltʃərəl ɪ,vent/
street theatre	n phr	/'stri:t ,θiətə/
traffic pollution	n phr	/'træfɪk pə,lju:ʃən/
vandalism	n	/'vændəlɪzəm/
youth club	n phr	/'ju:θ klʌb/

### Places

airport	n	/'eəpɔ:t/
aquapark	n	/'ækwəpɑ:k/
art gallery	n phr	/'ɑ:t ,gæləri/
boating lake	n phr	/'bəʊtɪŋ leɪk/
castle	n	/'kɑ:səl/
cathedral	n	/'kæθɪdrəl/
ice rink	n phr	/'aɪs rɪŋk/
medieval streets	n phr	/.medi-i:vəl 'stri:ts/
museum	n	/'mju:ziəm/
open-air market	n phr	/.əʊpən eə 'mɑ:kit/
river	n	/'rɪvə/

### Extra words

culture	n	/'kʌltʃə/
huge	adj	/'hju:dʒ/
literature festival	n phr	/'lɪtərəʃə ,festɪvəl/
music festival	n phr	/'mju:zɪk ,festɪvəl/
population	n	/.pɒpjə'leɪʃən/
statue	n	/'stætʃu:/
street performer	n phr	/'stri:t pə,fɔ:mə/
street vendors	n phr	/'stri:t ,vendəz/
traffic jam	n phr	/'træfɪk ,dʒæm/
underground	n	/'ʌndəgraʊnd/
wide	adj	/'waɪd/

## Module 5

### Transport

canoe	n	/'kə'nu:/
coach	n	/'kəʊtʃ/
helicopter	n	/'helɪkɒptə/
jet ski	n phr	/'dʒet ski:/
lorry	n	/'lɒri/
motorbike	n	/'məʊtəbaɪk/
mountain bike	n	/'maʊntən baɪk/
snowmobile	n	/'snəʊməbi:l/
tram	n	/'træm/

underground	n	/'ʌndəgraʊnd/
van	n	/'væn/
yacht	n	/'jɒt/
on foot	phr	/'ɒn 'fʊt/
on horseback	phr	/'ɒn 'hɔ:sbæk/

### Jobs

farmer	n	/'fɑ:mə/
fashion model	n phr	/'fæʃən ,mɒdl/
film maker	n phr	/'fɪlm ,meɪkə/
photographer	n	/'fə'tɒgrəfə/
police officer	n phr	/'pə'li:s ,ɒfɪsə/
politician	n	/.pɒlə'tɪʃən/
scientist	n	/'saɪəntɪst/
secretary	n	/'sekrətəri/
writer	n	/'raɪtə/
zoologist	n	/'zu:'blɒdʒɪst, zəʊ'n-/

### Animals

antelope	n	/'æntələʊp/
baboon	n	/'bæ'bu:n/
buffalo	n	/'bʌfələʊ/
cheetah	n	/'tʃi:tə/
giraffe	n	/'dʒɪ'rɑ:f/
hippo	n	/'hɪpəʊ/
hyena	n	/'haɪ'i:nə/
kangaroo	n	/.kæŋgə'ru:/
koala	n	/'kəʊ'ɑ:lə/
leopard	n	/'lepəd/
panda	n	/'pændə/
polar bear	n	/.pəʊlə 'beə/
python	n	/'paɪθən/
rhino	n	/'raɪnəʊ/
tiger	n	/'taɪgə/
wildebeest (gnu)	n	/'wɪldəbi:st, nu:/
zebra	n	/'zi:brə, 'ze-/

### Extra words

bungee jump	n phr	/'bʌndʒɪ ,dʒʌmp/
contemporary	adj	/'kɒn'tempərəri/
contrast	n	/'kɒntrɑ:st/
destination	n	/.destə'neɪʃən/
good-looking	adj	/'gʊd 'lʊkɪŋ/
harbour	n	/'hɑ:bə/
hard-working	adj	/'hɑ:d 'wɜ:kɪŋ/
indigenous	adj	/'ɪndɪdʒənəs/
landmark	n	/'lændmɑ:k/
old-fashioned	adj	/.əʊld 'fæʃənd/
paraglider	n	/'pærə,glaɪdə/
represent	v	/.repri'zent/
species	n	/'spi:ʃi:z/
symbol	n	/'sɪmbəl/
unique	adj	/'ju:'ni:k/

## Module 6

### Films

action	adj	/'ækʃən/
adventure	adj	/'əd'ventʃə/
animation	n	/.æni'meɪʃən/
children's	adj	/'tʃɪldrənz/
comedy	n	/'kɒmədi/
costume drama	n phr	/'kɒstjəm ,dra:mə/
crime	adj	/'kraɪm/
fantasy	adj	/'fæntəsi/
historical	adj	/'hɪ'stɒrɪkəl/
horror	adj	/'hɒrə/
musical	n	/'mju:zɪkəl/
romantic	adj	/.rəʊ'mæntɪk, rə-/
science-fiction	adj	/.saɪəns 'fɪkʃən/
spy	adj	/'spaɪ/
thriller	n	/'θrɪlə/
war	adj	/'wɔ:/
western	n	/'westən/



### Extra words

arms dealer	n phr	/ˈɑːmz ˈdiːlə/
evil	adj	/ˈiːvəl/
mission	n	/ˈmɪʃən/
skyscraper	n	/ˈskaɪˌskreɪpə/

## Module 7

### Personality adjectives

easy-going	adj	/ˈiːzi ˈɡəʊɪŋ/
energetic	adj	/ˈenəˈdʒetɪk/
extrovert	adj	/ˈekstrəvɜːt/
friendly	adj	/ˈfrendli/
hard-working	adj	/ˈhɑːd ˈwɜːkɪŋ/
helpful	adj	/ˈhelpfəl/
honest	adj	/ˈɒnəst/
independent	adj	/ˌɪndɪˈpendənt/
introvert	adj	/ˈɪntrəvɜːt/
kind	adj	/kaɪnd/
lazy	adj	/ˈleɪzi/
organised	adj	/ˈɔːɡənəɪzd/
outgoing	adj	/ˈaʊtˌɡəʊɪŋ/
practical	adj	/ˈpræktɪkəl/
quiet	adj	/ˈkwaɪət/
reliable	adj	/ˈrɪˌlaɪəbəl/
sensitive	adj	/ˈsensətɪv/
shy	adj	/ʃaɪ/
sociable	adj	/ˈsəʊjəbəl/
talkative	adj	/ˈtɔːkətɪv/
thoughtful	adj	/ˈθɔːtfl/
tidy	adj	/ˈtaɪdi/
untidy	adj	/ʌnˈtaɪdi/

### Feelings

angry	adj	/ˈæŋɡri/
annoyed	adj	/əˈnɔɪd/
anxious	adj	/ˈæŋkʃəs/
bored	adj	/bɔːd/
delighted	adj	/dɪˈlaɪtɪd/
depressed	adj	/dɪˈprest/
excited	adj	/ɪkˈsaɪtɪd/
furious	adj	/ˈfjʊəriəs/
nervous	adj	/ˈnɜːvəs/
relaxed	adj	/rɪˈlæksɪd/
sad	adj	/sæd/
scared	adj	/skeəd/
upset	adj	/ʌpˈset/
worried	adj	/ˈwʌrɪd/

### Extra words

investigate	v	/ɪnˈvestɪɡeɪt/
survive	v	/səˈvaɪv/
trial	n	/ˈtraɪəl/

## Module 8

### Music

aggressive	adj	/əˈɡresɪv/
catchy	adj	/ˈkætʃi/
classical music	n phr	/ˌklæsɪkəl ˈmjuːzɪk/
dance music	n phr	/ˈdɑːns ˈmjuːzɪk/
fast	adj	/fɑːst/
grunge	n	/ɡrʌndʒ/
happy	adj	/ˈhæpi/
heavy	adj	/ˈhevi/
heavy metal	n phr	/ˌhevi ˈmetl/
hip hop	n phr	/ˈhɪp hɒp/
jazz	n	/dʒæz/
jazzy	adj	/ˈdʒæzi/
lively	adj	/ˈlaɪvli/
loud	adj	/laʊd/
monotonous	adj	/məˈnɒtənəs/
pop music	n phr	/ˈpɒp ˈmjuːzɪk/
punk	n	/pʌŋk/
rap	n	/ræp/
relaxing	adj	/rɪˈlæksɪŋ/

repetitive	adj	/rɪˈpetətɪv/
rock	n	/rɒk/
romantic	adj	/rəʊˈmæntɪk, rɒ-/
slow	adj	/sləʊ/

### Instruments

acoustic guitar	n phr	/əˌkuːstɪk ɡɪˈtɑː/
bass guitar	n phr	/ˌbeɪs ɡɪˈtɑː/
cello	n	/ˈtʃeləʊ/
clarinet	n	/ˌklærɪˈnet/
double bass	n phr	/ˌdʌbəl ˈbeɪs/
drums	n	/drʌmz/
electronic	adj	/ˌelɪkˈtrɒnɪk, ɪˌlek-/
flute	n	/fluːt/
keyboard	n	/ˈkiːbɔːd/
organ	n	/ˈɔːɡən/
percussion instrument	n phr	/pəˈkʌʃən ˌɪnstrəmənt/
piano	n	/piˈænoʊ/
saxophone	n	/ˈsæksəfəʊn/
string instrument	n phr	/ˈstrɪŋ ˌɪnstrəmənt/
synthesizer	n	/ˈsɪnθesaɪzə/
trumpet	n	/ˈtrʌmpət/
violin	n	/ˌvaɪəˈlɪn/
wind instrument	n phr	/ˈwɪnd ˌɪnstrəmənt/

### Extra words

CD cover	n phr	/ˌsiː ˈdiː ˌkʌvə/
charity	n	/ˈtʃærəti/
DJ	n	/ˌdiː ˌdʒeɪ/
ethical	adj	/ˈeθɪkəl/
folk	n	/fəʊk/
pros and cons	n phr	/ˌprəʊz ən ˈkɒnz/
record label	n phr	/ˈrekɔːd ˌleɪbəl/
reggae	n uncount	/ˈregeɪ/
trade	n	/treɪd/

## Module 9

### Reading

address book	n phr	/əˈdres buːk/
atlas	n	/ˈætɪləs/
biography	n	/baɪˈɒɡrəfi/
blog	n	/blɒɡ/
CD-ROM	init	/ˌsiː diː ˈrɒm/
comic book	n phr	/ˈkɒmɪk buːk/
dictionary	n	/ˈdɪkʃənəri/
e-book	n	/ˈiː buːk/
encyclopaedia	n	/ɪnˌsaɪkləˈpiːdiə/
fiction	n uncount	/ˈfɪkʃən/
format	n	/ˈfɔːmət/
hardback	n	/ˈhɑːdbæk/
history book	n	/ˈhɪstəri buːk/
instruction manual	n phr	/ɪnˈstrʌkʃən ˌmænjʊəl/
literature	n uncount	/ˈlɪtərəʃə/
non-fiction	n uncount	/ˌnɒn ˈfɪkʃən/
novel	n	/ˈnɒvəl/
online	adj	/ˈɒnlain/
paperback	n	/ˈpeɪpəbæk/
phone book	n	/ˈfəʊn buːk/
play	n	/pleɪ/
poetry	n uncount	/ˈpəʊətri/
reference	n uncount	/ˈrefərəns/
short story	n	/ˌʃɔːt ˈstɔːri/

### Extra words

apologise	v	/əˈpɒlədʒaɪz/
audition	n	/əˈdɪʃən/
be hooked	v phr	bi ˈhʊkt/
dream	n	/driːm/
drummer	n	/ˈdrʌmə/
persuade	v	/pəˈsweɪd/
record producer	n phr	/ˈrekɔːd prəˌdjuːsə/
spread	v	/ˈspred/



## Module 10

### Science

archaeology	n	/,ɑ:ki'blədʒi/
astronomy	n	/ə'strɒnəmi/
biology	n	/baɪ'blədʒi/
botany	n	/'bɒtəni/
chemistry	n	/'kemɪstri/
geology	n	/dʒi'blədʒi/
medicine	n	/'medsɪn/
physics	n	/'fɪzɪks/
zoology	n	/zu:'blədʒi, zəu'n-/

### Animals

crocodile	n	/'krɒkədail/
dinosaur	n	/'daɪnəsɔ:/
elephant	n	/'eləfənt/
giant sloth	n phr	/,dʒaɪənt 'sləʊθ/
hamster	n	/'hæmstə/
horse	n	/hɔ:s/
lizard	n	/'lɪzəd/
mammoth	n	/'mæməθ/
rhinoceros	n	/raɪ'nɒsərəs/
sabre-toothed tiger	n phr	/,seɪbə tu:θt 'taɪgə/
whale	n	/weɪl/
wolf	n	/wʊlf/

### Extra words

ancient	adj	/'eɪnfənt/
atom	n	/'ætəm/
backbone	n	/'bækbaʊn/
bison	n	/'baɪsən/
botanist	n	/'bɒtənɪst/
chemist	n	/'kemɪst/
dig	n	/dɪg/
fake	n	/feɪk/
lung	n	/lʌŋ/
microchip	n	/'maɪkrəʊ,tʃɪp/
palaeontologist	n	/,pælɪən'tɒlədʒɪst, ,peɪ-/
seed	n	/si:d/
transistor	n	/'trænzɪstə/

## Module 3

### Science

archaeology	n	/,ɑ:ki'blədʒi/
astronomy	n	/ə'strɒnəmi/
biology	n	/baɪ'blədʒi/
botany	n	/'bɒtəni/
chemistry	n	/'kemɪstri/
geology	n	/dʒi'blədʒi/
medicine	n	/'medsɪn/
physics	n	/'fɪzɪks/
zoology	n	/zu:'blədʒi, zəu'n-/

### Animals

crocodile	n	/'krɒkədail/
dinosaur	n	/'daɪnəsɔ:/
elephant	n	/'eləfənt/
giant sloth	n phr	/,dʒaɪənt 'sləʊθ/
hamster	n	/'hæmstə/
horse	n	/hɔ:s/
lizard	n	/'lɪzəd/
mammoth	n	/'mæməθ/
rhinoceros	n	/raɪ'nɒsərəs/
sabre-toothed tiger	n phr	/,seɪbə tu:θt 'taɪgə/
whale	n	/weɪl/
wolf	n	/wʊlf/

### Extra words

ancient	adj	/'eɪnfənt/
atom	n	/'ætəm/
backbone	n	/'bækbaʊn/
bison	n	/'baɪsən/
botanist	n	/'bɒtənɪst/
chemist	n	/'kemɪst/
dig	n	/dɪg/
fake	n	/feɪk/
lung	n	/lʌŋ/
microchip	n	/'maɪkrəʊ,tʃɪp/
palaeontologist	n	/,pælɪən'tɒlədʒɪst, ,peɪ-/
seed	n	/si:d/
transistor	n	/'trænzɪstə/

## Module 5

### Science

archaeology	n	/,ɑ:ki'blədʒi/
astronomy	n	/ə'strɒnəmi/
biology	n	/baɪ'blədʒi/
botany	n	/'bɒtəni/
chemistry	n	/'kemɪstri/
geology	n	/dʒi'blədʒi/
medicine	n	/'medsɪn/
physics	n	/'fɪzɪks/
zoology	n	/zu:'blədʒi, zəu'n-/

### Animals

crocodile	n	/'krɒkədail/
dinosaur	n	/'daɪnəsɔ:/
elephant	n	/'eləfənt/
giant sloth	n phr	/,dʒaɪənt 'sləʊθ/
hamster	n	/'hæmstə/
horse	n	/hɔ:s/
lizard	n	/'lɪzəd/
mammoth	n	/'mæməθ/
rhinoceros	n	/raɪ'nɒsərəs/
sabre-toothed tiger	n phr	/,seɪbə tu:θt 'taɪgə/
whale	n	/weɪl/
wolf	n	/wʊlf/

### Extra words

ancient	adj	/'eɪnfənt/
atom	n	/'ætəm/
backbone	n	/'bækbaʊn/
bison	n	/'baɪsən/
botanist	n	/'bɒtənɪst/
chemist	n	/'kemɪst/
dig	n	/dɪg/
fake	n	/feɪk/
lung	n	/lʌŋ/
microchip	n	/'maɪkrəʊ,tʃɪp/
palaeontologist	n	/,pælɪən'tɒlədʒɪst, ,peɪ-/
seed	n	/si:d/
transistor	n	/'trænzɪstə/



# Grammar Reference

## and practice exercises

### Present Simple and Present Continuous

→ Module 1, pages 4–5

#### Present Simple

##### Use

We use the Present Simple to talk about

- activities that we do regularly (routines, habits):

*He **gets up** very early.*

*I **study** at a teacher training college.*

- present states and feelings:

*He **loves** animals.*

*We **have** a lot of friends.*

##### Form

To make statements, we add -s or -es to verbs in the 3rd person singular. A final -y changes to -ies:

*I **carry**, he **carries***

To make negative sentences and questions, we use the auxiliary *does* or *do*:

*We **don't go** swimming very often.*

***Does** she **eat** meat?*

##### Time adverbials

We use these time expressions with the Present Simple:

*always, usually, regularly, often, sometimes, occasionally, rarely, seldom, never, every morning, from time to time, twice a week, once a month*

#### Present Continuous

##### Use

We use the Present Continuous to talk about

- activities that are going on now, at the time of speaking:

*We're **waiting** for the teacher.*

*I can't go out. I'm **writing** an essay.*

- activities that are happening around now but not necessarily at the time of speaking:

*I'm **swimming** a lot this summer.*

*We're **training** every day to prepare for the match next week.*

##### Form

To make statements, negative sentences and questions, we use the auxiliary verb *be* in the present form and we add -ing to the main verb.

##### Time adverbials

We use these time expressions with the Present Continuous:

*just, now, at the moment, at present*

#### Present Simple and Present Continuous

We use the Present Simple to talk about things that happen regularly or are generally true.

We use the Present Continuous to talk about things happening now or around now:

*I **work** hard. (generally, always)*

*I'm **working** hard. (now or around now)*

*They **don't speak** English. (at all)*

*They **are not speaking** English. (now, at the moment of speaking)*

#### 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the Present Simple.

- My friends *don't go* (not go) to the cinema very often.
- ..... (Julia / watch) a lot of horror films?
- We never ..... (eat) fast food.
- My brother ..... (not learn) English at school.
- ..... (you / do) a sport?
- Peter ..... (speak) three languages.
- We sometimes ..... (visit) my grandparents at the weekends.
- Mary and John ..... (not go) out in the evenings during the week.

#### 2 Use the cues to make true sentences.

##### Example

*I sometimes go to the opera. I don't do a lot of exercise.*

I (go to the opera; do a lot of exercise; work after school)

- .....
- .....
- .....

My best friend (sing in a band; want to be a teacher; go out a lot)

- .....
- .....
- .....



**3 Use the cues to write sentences in the Present Continuous.**

- 1 Anna / carry / a lot of shopping.  
*Anna is carrying a lot of shopping.*
- 2 The children / play / quietly.  
.....
- 3 the teacher / wait / in the classroom?  
.....
- 4 We / not train / enough.  
.....
- 5 Sam / not learn / very much.  
.....
- 6 the students / write / a test?  
.....
- 7 My sisters / take / driving lessons.  
.....
- 8 what / you / read?  
.....

**4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the Present Continuous. Use the negative form if necessary.**

- 1 Ask Adam for help. He *isn't doing* (do) anything at the moment.
- 2 I ..... (eat) sweets this month. I'm on a diet.
- 3 Don't enter the teachers' room. They ..... (have) a meeting.
- 4 Monica ..... (learn) Spanish. She wants to go to Mexico.
- 5 We ..... (go) to school this week. We're on holiday.
- 6 I can't answer the phone. I ..... (make) a cake.
- 7 Clara is very tired after the swimming competition. She ..... (sleep) at the moment.
- 8 We can't tidy our room now. We ..... (do) our homework.

**5 Choose the correct forms.**

- 1 Can you make tea? The water *boils/is boiling*.
- 2 I don't want to go out now. It *rains/is raining*.
- 3 I think they are very rich. They *live/are living* in a big house in Oxford.
- 4 Listen to them! They *speak/are speaking* Chinese.
- 5 John is always busy. Where *does he work/is he working*?
- 6 Let's stay at home on New Year's Eve. I *don't enjoy/am not enjoying* big parties.
- 7 Can I borrow the newspaper? You *don't read/are not reading* it.
- 8 Everybody is in the kitchen. They *have/are having* lunch.

**6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

- 1 *Do you have* (you / have) any good friends in Russia? I ..... (learn) Russian and I ..... (want) to exchange e-mails with shop.
- 2 What trousers ..... (you / look for)? We ..... (not have) a big choice at the moment because we ..... (move) to another shop.
- 3 Brian ..... (not like) walking so he ..... (cycle) to school every day.
- 4 I'm a doctor. I ..... (work) at the local Health Centre. And what ..... (you / do)?
- 5 Why ..... (you / paint) your room grey? Grey ..... (make) everyone depressed!
- 6 Maria is very busy now. She ..... (finish) a project at school. Normally she ..... (go out) every evening.
- 7 ..... (you / use) the computer now? I ..... (write) an essay about ancient Egypt and I ..... (want) to go on the Internet.
- 8 My sister ..... (not eat) eggs. She ..... (be) allergic to them.
- 9 I think teachers ..... (not earn) enough money. They ..... (work) really hard. Look, it's 8 p.m. and Mr Jones ..... (coach) the school basketball team.
- 10 Look at Anna! Where ..... (she / go)? She ..... (wear) a black dress and high heels. She ..... (look) fantastic.



## Past Simple and Past Continuous

→ Module 2, pages 14–15

### Past Simple

#### Use

We use the Past Simple to talk about

- finished single events:  
*The ball **hit** the man on the head.*  
*He **escaped** from prison.*

- past situations:  
*I **liked** the film.*  
*The book **was** really interesting.*

- regular activities in the past:  
*She always **came** on Friday.*  
*He **worked** in a bank.*

To talk about someone's ability or lack of ability in the past or to say that something was possible or impossible, we use *could*:  
*He **could** swim when he was four.*  
*We **couldn't** find the way out.*

#### **had to/didn't have to; could/couldn't**

To talk about obligation or lack of obligation in the past, we use *had to/didn't have to*:

- He **had to** work very hard.*  
*We **didn't have to** wear uniforms at school.*

#### Form

To form the Past Simple, we add *-ed* to the infinitive. A final *-y* changes to *-ied*:

- We **talked** for two hours.*  
*She **carried** the baby upstairs.*

For irregular verbs, we use the past (2nd) form.

- We **met** at a party.*  
*I **bought** this jacket last summer.*

See Irregular Verbs, Students' Book page 108.

To make negative sentences and questions, we use the infinitive and *did* or *didn't*:

- We **didn't like** the play. It was too slow.*  
***Did** you **see** the match last night?*

### Past Continuous

#### Use

We use the Past Continuous to talk about

- activities that continued for some time in the past:  
*I **was reading** all day.*  
*They **were talking** for hours.*
- longer activities that form a background to past events:  
*It **was raining** when the match started.*  
*We **were watching** TV when David arrived.*

#### Form

To form the Past Continuous we use the subject + *was/were* + *-ing* form of the verb:

- José **was reading** a magazine.*  
*José **wasn't reading** a magazine.*  
***Was** José **reading** a magazine?*  
*They **were playing** tennis.*  
*They **weren't playing** tennis.*  
***Were** they **playing** tennis?*

### Past Simple and Past Continuous

When the Past Continuous and the Past Simple appear in one sentence, the Past Continuous describes the background (the setting of the scene), and the Past Simple reports an event. The two parts of the sentence are joined with *when* or *while*. We can use *when* in front of the Past Simple or Past Continuous. We usually use *while* only in front of the Past Continuous.

- She was reading **when/while** the phone rang.*  
***When/While** she was reading, the phone rang.*

## 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the Past Simple.

- When Miriam *saw* (see) the dogs, she *ran* (run) away.
- We ..... (want) to have lunch so we ..... (go) to the café on the corner.
- He ..... (give) me the flowers and ..... (say) that he ..... (love) me.
- I always ..... (wash up) and ..... (do) the shopping when I ..... (be) a teenager.
- Last night I ..... (come) home late because I ..... (watch) a film at my friend's place.
- I ..... (make) some sandwiches for the journey and we ..... (eat) them on the train.

## 2 Use the cues to write sentences in the Past Simple.

- Where / you / put / the English dictionary?  
*Where did you put the English dictionary?*
- We / not see / anybody on the way here.  
.....
- you / feed the dog?  
.....
- Joe / fall / into the lake yesterday.  
.....
- I / not watch / the match last night.  
.....
- Mum / buy / me a lot of CDs for my birthday.  
.....



**3 Use the cues to complete the sentences with *could*, *couldn't*, *had to* or *didn't have to*.**

- 1 I didn't have the key. (wait for my mother)  
I *had to wait for my mother*.
- 2 Miriam is a great swimmer. (swim when she was four)  
She .....
- 3 The concert was free. (pay for the tickets)  
We .....
- 4 The window was locked. (open it)  
I .....
- 5 The school bus broke down. (walk to school)  
We .....
- 6 People brought food and drinks to the party. (buy anything)  
We .....
- 7 He spoke very fast. (understand him)  
I .....
- 8 I had a lot of free time at primary school. (do what I wanted)  
I .....

**4 Complete the sentences with *could*, *couldn't*, *had to* or *didn't have to*.**

- 1 My parents were very busy so I *had to* look after my younger brother.
- 2 Chopin was a genius, he ..... play the piano when he was five.
- 3 The lock froze during the night and I ..... open the gate.
- 4 Maria ..... take a bus to school, her dad gave her a lift.
- 5 Antonio broke his leg and so he ..... take part in the competition.
- 6 I ..... study a lot because the exam was very difficult.
- 7 When I had flu, I ..... go to school.
- 8 I'm sure you ..... draw when you were six, everybody could.

**5 Rearrange the words to make sentences in the Past Continuous.**

- 1 at / watching / were / TV / 9 o'clock / you / ?  
*Were you watching TV at 9 o'clock?*
- 2 listening / they / weren't / to / teacher / the  
.....
- 3 someone / night / trumpet / playing / the / in / was / street / the / all  
.....
- 4 where / last / Mike / at / was / 10 / o'clock / going / night / ?  
.....
- 5 were / on / we / newspapers / reading / morning / Sunday.  
.....
- 6 who / phone / talking / half / on / was / the / hour / an / ago / ?  
.....

**6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

- 1 I *saw* (see) Julia while she *was crossing* (cross) the street in front of the school.
- 2 What ..... (you / do) at midnight? I'm sure you ..... (not sleep).
- 3 My dad ..... (hit) the car in front of him because he ..... (think) about his work.
- 4 Last summer I ..... (fall) off a horse and I ..... (break) my arm.
- 5 I'm sorry I ..... (knock) over your glass, I ..... (not pay) attention.
- 6 Who ..... (you / talk) to all evening? I ..... (try) to call you ten times and the line ..... (be) busy.
- 7 He ..... (take) a photo when someone ..... (bump) into him.
- 8 What ..... (the Queen / wear) at the ceremony? I ..... (not watch) it on TV.

**7 Choose the correct linking words.**

- 1 When / While she stopped reading, she noticed me.
- 2 I was writing an e-mail to my cousin *when/while* she phoned me.
- 3 *When/While* we were talking, Mark ordered the drinks.
- 4 She was seven *when/while* she had that horrible accident.
- 5 *When/While* I was walking to school, I met a friend from primary school.
- 6 We had a nice chat *when/while* we were waiting for the bus.



## Question tags and interested responses

→ Module 2, page 21

### Question tags

#### Use

We use question tags at the end of statements when we want someone to confirm what we already know:

*Josh is American, **isn't he?***

*You haven't been to the States, **have you?***

We also use question tags when we express opinions and look for the other person's agreement or want to involve them in conversation:

*The match was brilliant, **wasn't it?***

*Money isn't everything, **is it?***

#### Form

In the question tag we use the auxiliary (*be*, *have* or a modal verb) that we used earlier in the sentence (for the Present Simple we use *do/does* and for the Past Simple we use *did*) and the pronoun to refer to the subject of the sentence.

A negative question tag follows a positive statement and a positive question tag follows a negative statement.

*He's thirsty, **isn't he?***

*She **hasn't done** her homework yet, **has she?***

*She **works** hard, **doesn't she?***

Question	Request for confirmation
<i>Are you Polish?</i>	<i>You're Polish, <b>aren't you?</b></i>
<i>Can we go now?</i>	<i>We can go now, <b>can't we?</b></i>
<i>Does he speak English?</i>	<i>He doesn't speak English, <b>does he?</b></i>

## Interested responses

#### Use

When we want to show that we are interested in what the other person is telling us, we can use short questions:

*Brian has gone to Africa. **Has he?***

*England are playing really well? **Are they?***

*I can't cook. **Can't you?***

*Tom's a great teacher. **Is he?***

*I can speak Spanish. **Can you?***

#### Form

To show interest, we use the auxiliary that was used in the sentence (or *do/does*, *did*) and the pronoun to refer to the subject of the sentence. If the sentence is negative, the question is negative as well.

*I know Brad Pitt. **Do you?***

*We didn't win the game. **Didn't you?***

*I don't like chocolate. **Don't you?***

*They didn't catch their train. **Didn't they?***

### 1 Complete the questions with correct question tags.

- Your sister speaks Russian, *doesn't she?*
- Matt is planning a holiday at sea, .....?
- Teachers don't earn a lot of money, .....?
- You've just moved to London, .....?
- Cathy wasn't driving fast, .....?
- Your school is the best in Krakow, .....?
- Rooney got a red card during the World Cup, .....?
- We can go home now, .....?
- Martha's parents found out about her boyfriend, .....?
- It's going to rain in the evening, .....?
- You will help me, .....?
- They like sport, .....?
- Your parents were in Paris last spring, .....?
- The book isn't very interesting, .....?

### 2 Respond to the statements with questions to show interest.

- I broke my ankle. *Did you..?*
- We haven't seen any of *The Lord of the Rings* films. ....?
- Josh lives in a boat house. ....?
- We'd like to go to the next World Cup. ....?
- I didn't like *The Pirates of the Caribbean*. ....?
- My friends are learning to drive. ....?
- This is the best book I've read. ....?
- My dog can jump onto my desk. ....?
- Students often come to exams unprepared. ....?
- The film was too long. ....?
- I'll study medicine. ....?
- Mark didn't start the fight. ....?



## The passive

→ Module 3, pages 24–25

### Use

We use the passive

- when we don't know or there is no need to say who did the action (the action itself is more important than who did it):

Penicillin **was discovered** in 1929.

A lot of people **are killed** in wars.

- when we want to put emphasis on **who** did something. When we say who performed the action, we add a 'by-phrase' to the passive sentence:

This book **was written by Hemingway**.

Viruses **are not killed by antibiotics**.

### Form

#### Present Simple

am/is/are + 3rd form of the main verb:

The classroom **is painted** every summer.

The building **isn't finished**.

**Are** the shops **closed** at seven?

#### Past Simple

was/were + 3rd form of the main verb:

The road **was closed** because of the flood.

They **weren't given** the exam results.

**Was** it **tested** on animals?

Compare the form of an active sentence and a passive sentence:

They **sing** the national anthem every morning.

The national anthem **is sung** every morning.

### 1 Complete the sentences with the Present Simple passive.

- 1 Rice *is grown*. (grow) in Asia.
- 2 Our tests ..... (check) within one week.
- 3 Ferrari ..... (make) in Italy.
- 4 The homeless ..... (give) little help from the government.
- 5 Pasta ..... (serve) in all Italian restaurants.
- 6 New prehistoric skeletons ..... (discover) every year.
- 7 In rich countries, dogs ..... (keep) in the house.

### 2 Use the cues to write sentences in the Past Simple passive.

- 1 The terrorist / arrest / in his home town.  
*The terrorist was arrested in his home town.*
- 2 The letter / send / to all ministers.  
.....
- 3 Our protest / ignore / completely.  
.....
- 4 A Picasso / sell / for almost \$1 million.  
.....
- 5 I / tell / to drink a lot of water.  
.....
- 6 The car / repair / in two hours.  
.....
- 7 The president / ask / a lot of interesting questions.  
.....

### 3 Rewrite the sentences in the passive. Start with the words given.

- 1 Someone invented the wheel in prehistoric times.  
The wheel *was invented in prehistoric times* .....
- 2 A friend damaged the CD player during my birthday party.  
The CD player .....
- 3 Someone steals a lot of bikes in our street.  
A lot of bikes .....
- 4 People celebrate Children's Day on 1st June.  
Children's Day .....
- 5 They gave me a bunch of beautiful roses.  
I .....
- 6 In Poland, we pick strawberries in June.  
In Poland, strawberries .....
- 7 The police found the stolen car in the forest.  
The stolen car .....
- 8 They played *Yesterday* three times.  
*Yesterday* .....
- 9 Someone robbed the bank on Tuesday morning.  
The bank .....
- 10 Someone saw the robbers getting into a white van.  
The robbers .....



## Speculating

→ Module 4, pages 34–35

### Use

We use modal verbs to speculate.

We use *must* when we have strong evidence and are certain that something is true:

*There's a queue outside. It **must** be a popular club.*

We use *could* when we have weak evidence and we express a possibility that something is true:

*She has black hair and dark skin. She **could** be Spanish or Italian.*

We use *can't* when we have strong evidence and we are certain that something isn't true:

*They live in a tiny flat. They **can't** be rich.*

### Form

To speculate about present situations, we use the modal verb + infinitive:

*She **must** know them.*

*They **can't** have a lot of money.*

*They look alike. They **could** be brothers.*

### 1 Complete the sentences with the verbs the box.

be (x2) know have feel like

- Everybody looks tired. It could *be* too hot in the classroom.
- They are laughing a lot. They must his jokes.
- He can't many friends. He's always on his own.
- He's not using a map. He must this area.
- Everybody's wearing hats and coats. It must cold outside.
- Your house is so big for one person. You must lonely.

### 2 Complete the sentences with *must*, *can't* or *could*.

- People are leaving in the middle of the film. It *must* be really boring.
- The dog has eaten a kilo of meat. It be hungry.
- The police are looking for the money. It be hidden in the park.
- You're working so hard. You be tired.
- He has a strange accent. He be South African.
- They're vegetarian. They like hamburgers.
- He doesn't even have a car. He be rich.
- You read a lot. You have a lot of free time.
- Maria is very muscular. She be a swimmer.

### 3 Use the cues to complete the speculations based on the evidence.

- Mary is running very fast.  
She *must be* in a hurry.  
She late for a date.  
She a lot of time left.
- Mark has fallen asleep during the lesson.  
Mark tired.  
The lesson interesting.  
The teacher annoyed.
- Julia is reading and laughing.  
The book sad.  
Julia the book.  
Reading Julia's hobby.
- Mike's computer doesn't work.  
There a power cut.  
Mike happy.  
The computer old.
- Two boys are fighting.  
They angry with each other.  
They best friends.  
They in love with the same girl.
- Tom is eating a sandwich during the lesson.  
He hungry.  
The teacher very strict.  
Tom no time to eat during the breaks.



## Personal pronouns

→ Module 4, page 41

### Form

Subject	Object	Possessive adjectives	Possessive pronouns	Reflexive pronouns
I	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	it	its	its	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

### Use

#### Possessive adjectives and pronouns

We use possessive adjectives in front of nouns and possessive pronouns without nouns:

*This is **my** bike.* (possessive adjective)

*This bike is **mine**.* (possessive pronoun)

*John didn't have **his** dictionary so Mary lent him **hers**.*

***Our** car was too small so we all went in **theirs**.*

### Reflexive pronouns

We use reflexive pronouns when the person is the object of their own action/feeling:

*I cut **myself** with a knife. (not: ~~I cut me with a knife.~~)*

***She** looked at **herself** in the mirror.*

***They** blame **themselves** for the accident.*

Compare these sentences:

***She** looked at **her** in the mirror.* (She looked at another person.)

***She** looked at **herself** in the mirror.* (She looked at her own reflection.)

### Reflexive and reciprocal pronouns

We use *each other* to say that person A does something to person B and person B does the same thing to person A.

*Mark and Ann are in love with **each other**.* (Mark loves Ann and Ann loves Mark.)

***They** know **each other** very well.* (Everyone knows everyone else.)

Compare these sentences:

*Mary and Ann are looking at **each other**.* (Mary is looking at Ann and Ann is looking at Mary.)

*Mary and Ann are looking at **themselves**.* (Mary is looking at herself and Ann is looking at herself.)

### 1 Choose the correct words.

- Maggie borrowed that dress from my/mine sister. It's not her/hers.
- Our/Ours team didn't play well so we supported their/theirs.
- I like my/mine school, it's nicer than your/yours.
- Is this jacket her/hers? I thought it was your/yours.
- This black pen is my/mine. Why have you put it in your/yours bag?
- Their/Theirs CDs were very old so we brought our/ours to the party.

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct reflexive pronouns.

- Jane bought herself a lovely dress.
- I cut ..... when I was chopping onions.
- Tom is so selfish, he thinks only about .....
- We didn't enjoy ..... at the party.
- Can you make ..... a cup of tea? I'm washing up.
- Many people like talking about ..... and their problems.
- Anna hates watching ..... on video.
- The students recorded ..... while giving their presentations.

### 3 Choose the correct pronoun.

- Romeo and Juliet loved themselves/each other.
- Your team won the game because you believed in yourselves/each other.
- In my class, we always buy ourselves/each other presents before Christmas.
- Dogs and cats often fight with themselves/each other.
- After the success of our performance, we were very proud of ourselves/each other.
- The street was so crowded that they couldn't find themselves/each other.
- Matt and Dan don't like themselves/each other – they never talk to themselves/each other.
- I can't help you any more, you have to start looking after yourselves/each other.
- The concert was great, we really enjoyed ourselves/each other.
- They are in love, they spend all their time with themselves/each other.
- How long did they know themselves/each other?
- Why didn't you tell yourselves/each other about your feelings?



## Present Perfect

→ Module 5, pages 44–45

### Use

We use the Present Perfect to talk about

- a past event that has consequences in the present:  
*Arsenal **have now moved** to the top of the league.*
- events in the past if we don't know or are not interested in exactly when they happened:

*I **have been** abroad many times.* (it doesn't matter exactly when)

*She **has** already **passed** her driving test.* (at some time before now, we don't know or care when)

Compare these sentences:

*Peter **has been** abroad.* (an event from the past, Peter may be anywhere at the moment of speaking)

*Peter **has gone** abroad.* (he is abroad now)

### Time adverbials

We can use the following time expressions with the Present Perfect:

*before, just, ever, never, already, yet*

We use *already* in statements, and *yet* in questions and negative sentences:

*I haven't written a letter in English **before**.*

*Have you **ever** been abroad?*

*We've **never** met him.*

*I've **already** had lunch.*

*Have you had lunch **yet**?*

*I haven't had lunch **yet**.*

### 1 Rewrite these sentences, using the words in brackets.

1 I have eaten sushi. (never, before)

*I **have never eaten** sushi **before**.*

2 I haven't decided what to do. (yet)

3 The match has finished. (already)

4 He has worked in a pub. (never)

5 Have you taken your driving test? (yet)

6 Have you been to a fashion show? (ever)

### 2 Rearrange the words to make sentences.

1 we / yet / haven't / homework / done / our

***We haven't done our homework yet.***

2 I've / three / London / been / to / times / already

3 my / me / shouted / parents / have / at / never

4 invited / has / yet / his / Peter / his / to / birthday / friends / party / ?

5 you / have / to / ever / change / your / wanted / school / ?

6 before / played / they / squash / haven't

### 3 Use the cues to write sentences in the Present Perfect.

1 I / try snorkelling / never

***I've never tried snorkelling.***

2 my sister / not finish school / yet

3 your teachers / show you films / ever / ?

4 my father / change his job / many times

5 I / have a date / never / before

6 you / get a bike for Christmas / ever / ?

7 we / travel on our own / never

8 you / see the latest Johnny Depp film / yet / ?

9 all my friends / go on holiday / already

10 we / not write the essay / yet

11 you / eat seafood / before / ?

12 I / not pass my driving test / yet



## Predictions

→ Module 6, pages 44–45

### Use

We use *will/won't* + infinitive to express our opinions and beliefs about the future, when our prediction is based on intuition, knowledge or experience.

We often use *will* with *I think, I hope, I believe, certainly, perhaps, maybe, probably*:

*I think he **will make** a very good lawyer.*

*They **won't come** to school tomorrow.*

We use *may/might* + infinitive to express uncertain predictions about the future when we doubt if something will happen or not:

*We **may be** too tired to go out tonight.*

*Beckham **might score** a goal this time.*

We use *be going to* + infinitive to express predictions based on present evidence, facts that we can observe now:

*Look at the clouds. It's **going to rain**.*

*They are losing 0:2. They **are not going to win**.*

### 1 Complete the sentences with *will* or *won't*.

- 1 He's a very good player. I think he *will* score a goal.
- 2 Pete has gone abroad, he ..... come to the meeting.
- 3 Carol speaks French. She ..... help you translate this text.
- 4 Don't worry, I'm sure Jake ..... get angry with you.
- 5 My friend are ambitious. They ..... certainly study at the university.
- 6 I'm sure the teacher ..... come. She's already 40 minutes late.
- 7 Dye your hair red – you ..... certainly look more interesting.
- 8 I hope the winter ..... be mild. I hate cold.

### 2 Use the cues and *will/won't* to write predictions about 2050.

- 1 People / stop reading books  
.....
- 2 Kids / go to school  
.....
- 3 We / watch films on our computers  
.....
- 4 There / be wars in the world.  
.....
- 5 Europe / become one country  
.....
- 6 The climate / get colder  
.....
- 7 Cars / use solar energy  
.....
- 8 We / go on holidays in space  
.....

### 3 Use the cues and *may/might* to write predictions about how the situations below will develop.

- 1 Frank sees a young man breaking into a car.  
stop the robber, call the police, scream to frighten the robber, run away, get scared  
*He **might stop** the robber.*  
.....  
.....  
.....
- 2 Beth and Mark have their first date tonight.  
go to the cinema, have dinner at a restaurant, buy Beth some flowers, kiss, never see each other again after tonight  
.....  
.....  
.....
- 3 Cathy finds a gold bracelet on the pavement.  
put an announcement in the local paper, give it to the police, keep the bracelet, leave the bracelet on the pavement  
.....  
.....  
.....
- 4 Liz has won a lot of money.  
travel around the world, buy a big house, invite her friends to a party, spend the money in a few months, put it in a bank  
.....  
.....  
.....



**4 Use the cues and *may/might* to answer the questions.**

1 Where are you going to go on holiday? (to the seaside / the mountains)

*I don't know yet. I might go to the seaside or to the mountains.*

2 What language are you going to learn? (Spanish / French)

3 When are you planning to go to the cinema? (Saturday night / Sunday)

4 What do you want to eat for lunch? (a sandwich / a salad)

5 Who are you going to dance with? (Diana / Susan)

6 What are you going to do tonight? (go swimming / watch a film on TV)

**5 Use the cues and *going to* to make predictions based on these situations.**

1 We've had very heavy rain for a week. (be a flood)

There *is going to be a flood*.

2 Julia looks very pale. (faint)

She .....

3 I feel cold and I have a headache. (get flu)

I .....

4 The film starts in five minutes. (be late)

We .....

5 It's freezing today. (be cold in this jacket)

You .....

6 Some trains are cancelled. (be crowded)

The next one .....

7 Look at the blue sky! (be a beautiful day)

It .....

8 There's fog in Amsterdam. (not land there)

The plane .....

**6 Look at the picture. Use the cues to make predictions with *going to*, *will/won't* and *may/might*.**



1 boat / sink

*The boat is going to sink.*

2 rain / not stop soon

3 crew / drown

4 crew / send an S.O.S. signal

5 a fishing boat / rescue them

6 sea / calm down

7 crew / put on life jackets

8 sharks / eat them



## Present Perfect and Past Simple

→ Module 6, page 61

### Use

We use the Present Perfect to talk about a past event that has consequences in the present.

We also use the Present Perfect when the exact time of the event is not important.

When we mention a particular time in the past, we use the Past Simple.

Compare these sentences:

*I've cut my finger.* (it's cut now, it doesn't matter when it happened)

*I cut my finger yesterday.* (the time in the past is specified)

*I've met Frances before.* (it doesn't matter when)

*I met Frances last summer.* (the time is specified)

### 1 Choose the correct tense.

- 1 I ~~visited~~/have visited Paris a few times.
- 2 My granny got/has got married in the 1960s.
- 3 Our maths teacher broke/has broken his leg – he's in hospital.
- 4 We went/have gone to Tuscany last summer.
- 5 My class won/has won a lot of sports competitions – we're good at sports.
- 6 Why are you so pale? Did you see/Have you seen a ghost?
- 7 Greece didn't take part/hasn't taken part in the last World Cup.
- 8 I bought/have bought a lot of sweets when I was a child.
- 9 Did you eat/Have you eaten anything interesting when you were in China?
- 10 I can't go swimming. I lost/have lost my bathing suit.
- 11 Who put/has put my shoes outside last night? They are really wet!
- 12 Don't be cross with me, I didn't do/haven't done anything wrong.

### 2 Decide what the people will say in these situations.

- 1 A man is looking for his car keys.  
a I've lost my car keys.  
b I lost my car keys.
- 2 A film star is talking about her childhood.  
a I spent all my money on ice cream.  
b I've spent all my money on ice cream.
- 3 A boy is showing his mother a ten-pound note.  
a I've found ten pounds.  
b I found ten pounds.
- 4 A woman is talking about her grandmother.  
a She's been a very good student.  
b She was a very good student.

### 3 Complete the sentences with the Present Perfect or the Past Simple.

- 1 A: Have you read (you / read) today's newspaper yet?  
B: Not yet. But I ..... (watch) the news at breakfast. They ..... (show) the train accident in Egypt.
- 2 A: I ..... (make) some sandwiches. Are you hungry?  
B: Not really. We ..... (have) lunch at school.
- 3 A: Bill travels a lot. .... (he / ever be) to Prague?  
B: No, but he ..... (be) to Vienna several times and he ..... (go) to Budapest in the spring.
- 4 A: I ..... (spend) a month in India last summer. It ..... (be) amazing.  
B: I ..... (not visit) any Asian country yet. Maybe next year.
- 5 A: Hurry up! Our taxi ..... (arrive)!  
B: I'm not ready! I ..... (not finish) packing my suitcase! Where ..... (you / put) my jumper? I can't find it.
- 6 A: When ..... (you / meet) Sara?  
B: We ..... (work) on the last school picnic together. She ..... (organise) every picnic in the last three years.
- 7 A: Your neighbours are very friendly. How long ..... (you / live) in this area?  
B: We ..... (move in) in 1996 and we ..... (not know) anyone. We ..... (meet) a lot of nice people since then.



## Future conditional

→ Module 7, pages 64–65

### Use and Form

We use the Future Conditional to talk about possible future events and their consequences. We make Future Conditional sentences with *If* + Present Simple, *will/won't* + infinitive without *to*:

*If the rain stops, the match will begin.*

*If you don't stop talking, you'll have to leave the classroom.*

We also use this conditional to give people advice, requests or orders. We make these sentences with *If* + Present Simple, imperative:

*If you feel sleepy, go to bed.*

*If you meet Peter, tell him to phone me.*

*If she has an accident, call an ambulance at once.*

In future conditionals we sometimes use the conjunction *unless* + Present Simple:

*I'll fail the exam unless I learn more. = I will fail the exam if I don't learn more.*

*She always comes to work unless she is seriously ill. = She always comes to work if she isn't seriously ill.*

We cannot use *unless* after negative verb forms.

In time clauses referring to the future, we use the Present Simple (not *will*) after *when*:

*When the game is over, we'll have a cup of tea.*

*I will write this letter when I have some time.*

### 1 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 I *will miss*..... (miss) my brother when he ..... *goes*..... (go) to study abroad.
- 2 If she ..... (pass) this exam, she ..... (get) a computer from her grandmother.
- 3 We ..... (not write) the essay unless the teacher ..... (give) us more time.
- 4 I'm sure Mary ..... (be) very happy when she ..... (see) you.
- 5 The dog ..... (bite) you if you ..... (touch) him now.
- 6 Unless they ..... (be) really good, they ..... (not take part) in the competition.

### 2 Use the cues and the verbs from the box to complete the advice for tourists.

go (x2) find (x3) inform

- 1 If you need a map, *find a tourist information office*..... (a tourist information office)
- 2 If you want to travel cheaply, ..... (by bus)
- 3 If you want to have a break, ..... (a quiet café)
- 4 If you get robbed, ..... (the police)
- 5 If you lose your passport, ..... (to your embassy)
- 6 If you fall ill, ..... (a medical centre)

### 3 Rewrite the sentences using the linking words.

- 1 We will finish our homework and then we'll go to the swimming pool.  
*We'll go to the swimming pool when we finish our homework*.....
- 2 Robert won't go to the interview and he won't get a part in the film.  
Unless .....
- 3 We won't be late for the concert because we know that they won't let us in then.  
If .....
- 4 Maria won't travel if she doesn't learn English and Spanish.  
..... unless .....
- 5 First I'll get home and then I'll phone you.  
..... when .....
- 6 I'll lend you my bike but first I want you to promise to look after it.  
..... if .....



## Defining relative clauses

→ Module 8, pages 74–75

### Use and Form

Relative clauses give information about people and things we have mentioned:

students who want to go to this school

sports which require strength

We use defining relative clauses to identify the person or thing we are talking about.

Students who go to this school have to learn a lot.

The letter (which) I sent a few weeks ago was lost in the post.

In these relative clauses we don't use a comma in front of the relative pronoun.

We use these relative pronouns in relative clauses

- *who* (and sometimes *that*) to talk about people:

I don't like people who throw litter.

- *that* to talk about animals:

There's the cat that scratched me.

- *which* (and *that*) to talk about things, places, etc:

The park which is in the centre of town has beautiful old trees.

- *where* to talk about positions and places:

The café where we met has closed down.

- *whose* to talk about possession:

I met a boy whose mother teaches at our school.

- *when* to talk about times:

I'll never forget the day when we first met.

We can omit the relative pronoun *which*, *that* or *who* in relative clauses if it is **not** the subject of the relative clause, i.e. if it is not immediately followed by a verb:

The girl (who) you met is my cousin. (the subject of the relative clause is *you*, not *who*)

Green Lemon is the café (which/that) we like most. (the subject of the relative clause is *we*, not *which*)

### 1 Underline the relative clauses and circle the relative pronouns in these sentences.

- 1 I have a friend (whose) parents are Czech.
- 2 I haven't yet seen the guitar David bought last week.
- 3 We're going to meet in the club where my parents had their wedding party.
- 4 The judo class that we have on Tuesday has been moved to Friday.
- 5 Who are the people that came with Peter?
- 6 The book you're reading seems very interesting.
- 7 Do you know the man who runs this club?
- 8 I remember the time when we were in the same school.

### 2 Complete the sentences with correct relative pronouns. Leave the gap empty if the pronoun is not necessary.

- 1 Many musicians ..... *who* ..... were popular in the 1960s sang rock.
- 2 I've never heard of the band ..... concert I'm invited to.
- 3 Someone's sitting at the table ..... we booked.
- 4 The shop ..... I bought these trousers has closed down.
- 5 I like films ..... make me laugh.
- 6 She came with a boy ..... goes to my school.

### 3 Rewrite the sentences, adding relative clauses in the correct places. Cross out the unnecessary relative pronouns.

- 1 The boy is very handsome. (who lent me his pen during the test)  
*The boy who lent me his pen during the test is very handsome.*
- 2 My friend lost the watch. (which he got at Christmas)  
.....
- 3 My mother works with a man. (whose daughter is in my class)  
.....
- 4 The computer was infected with a virus. (that we bought)  
.....
- 5 Let's go to a cinema. (where we can get something to eat)  
.....
- 6 The game was not very interesting. (that we watched)  
.....



## Nouns and adjectives

→ Module 8, pages 81

### Nouns

Some English nouns can be singular or plural:  
*dog – dogs, table – tables, woman – women*

Some nouns, e.g. uncountable nouns, are always singular:  
*money, news, fashion*

Uncountable nouns always appear with a singular verb:  
*There is some tea left in the pot.*

We don't use *a* or numerals in front of them and we use quantifiers such as *much* and *(a) little* in front of them:  
*I don't have much time.*

Some nouns are always plural:  
*police, people, trousers*

### Adjectives

There are various types of adjectives in English. The most important are

- opinion adjectives that inform about the speaker's opinion about a person or thing:  
*lovely, important, valuable*

- classifying adjectives that inform what kind of person or thing it is:  
*atomic, physical, gothic*

We often use nouns as adjectives: *a summer dress, a school lunch, afternoon tea*

If we use more than one adjective in front of a noun, we use them in a particular order:

opinion adjective – classifying adjective – noun used as adjective – noun

*an ugly country house*

*modern electronic rock music*

#### 1 Complete the sentences with *is* or *are*.

- Her feet *are* very small.
- Your glasses ..... over there.
- The information we have ..... reliable.
- The children ..... playing in the school yard.
- My luggage ..... very heavy.
- This tea ..... very strong.
- There ..... some sheep on the hill.
- The police in this town ..... very efficient.

#### 2 Correct the sentences by putting *a/an* where necessary. Some sentences are correct.

- We'll need luck and <sup>a</sup> good goalkeeper to win the game.
- Let's go to café in the town centre.
- I hate loud music and noisy people.
- He found good job at local bank.
- There is heavy traffic in London.
- I have friend who keeps parrot in his room.
- Teenagers often spend hours in shopping malls.
- can't go out to disco. I have to write essay.

#### 3 Complete the sentences with the adjectives in brackets in the correct order.

- They have a *small wooden* (small / wooden) house in the country.
- There are three ..... (history / clever) students in my English class.
- I've bought a ..... (round / beautiful) mat for my bedroom.
- For lunch, we had very ..... (hot / vegetable) curry.
- There is an ..... (art / interesting) exhibition at the museum.
- They sang an ..... (Irish / old / wedding) song.
- I put everything in a ..... (large / plastic) bag.
- She was wearing a pair of ..... (stylish / leather / black) shoes.
- We gave Jane a ..... (lovely / silver) bracelet.
- Jack spends his winter holidays in an ..... (Austrian / ski / expensive) resort.
- I like ..... (folk / traditional) music.
- There's a ..... (fascinating / science-fiction) film in our cinema.



## Reported orders, requests and advice

→ Module 9, pages 84–85

### Use and Form

When we report a request or order, we use the pattern *ask/tell/order/want someone to + infinitive*:

'Could you shut the window, Mike?'

Susan **asked Mike to shut** the window.

'Show me your passport!'

The officer **ordered me to show** him my passport.

When the request or order is negative, we use the pattern *ask/tell/order someone not to + infinitive*:

'Please don't talk!'

The teacher **asked us not to talk**.

'Don't panic!'

The pilot **told us not to panic**.

To report advice, we use the pattern *advise someone (not) to + infinitive*:

'You should go to bed.'

She **advised me to go** to bed.

'You shouldn't eat anything after seven.'

He **advised me not to eat** anything after seven.

To report a warning we use the pattern *warn someone not to + infinitive*:

'Don't trust John!'

She **warned me not to trust** John.

Notice how pronouns change in reporting:

**Fan to a pop star:** 'Could you give **me** your autograph?'

**Fan:** I asked **her** to give **me** **her** autograph.

**Pop star:** He asked **me** to give **him** **my** autograph.

**Witness:** He asked **her** to give **him** **her** autograph.

### 1 Write the original sentences.

- 1 The teacher told us not to use dictionaries during the test.

*Don't use dictionaries during the test.*

- 2 I advised Lucy to stay at home.

- 3 My parents wanted me to go with them to the opera.

- 4 The head teacher warned us not to leave the group during the tour of Rome.

- 5 Mike asked me to lend him my bike.

- 6 The police ordered everybody to leave the building.

- 7 My mother warned me not to go out with wet hair.

- 8 The shop assistant asked me to try the shoes on.

### 2 Complete the reports with correct pronouns.

- 1 **Tom, to his sister at the table:** 'Could you pass me the bread?'

**Tom:** ..... asked ..... to pass ..... the bread.

**Tom's sister:** ..... asked ..... to pass ..... the bread.

**Their dad:** ..... asked ..... to pass ..... the bread.

- 2 **A fireman to hotel guests:** 'Leave all your belongings and get out!'

**The fireman:** ..... ordered ..... to leave all ..... belongings and get out.

**A hotel guest:** ..... ordered ..... to leave all ..... belongings and get out.

**A witness:** ..... ordered ..... to leave all ..... belongings and get out.

- 3 **Anna to Stephen:** 'Give me back my bike!'

**Anna:** ..... told ..... to give ..... back ..... bike.

**Stephen:** ..... told ..... to give ..... back ..... bike.

**Anna's friend:** ..... told ..... to give ..... back ..... bike.

- 4 **Ms Harris to her students:** 'Leave your tests on my desk!'

**Ms Harris:** ..... told ..... to leave ..... tests on ..... desk.

**Student:** ..... told ..... to leave ..... tests on ..... desk.

**Another teacher:** ..... told ..... to leave ..... tests on ..... desk.



### 3 Complete the reported orders and requests.

- 1 'Go home!'  
He told us *to go home*
- 2 'Don't look at it!'  
He told me .....
- 3 'Can you help me?'  
He asked me .....
- 4 'Don't drink fizzy drinks!'  
He told us .....
- 5 'Bring your own sleeping bags, please!'  
He told them .....
- 6 'Don't stop in the tunnel!'  
He told her .....
- 7 'Don't talk to each other!'  
He told them .....
- 8 'Study more!'  
He told him .....
- 9 'Could you show me the way to the post office?'  
He asked me .....
- 10 'Don't listen to hip hop all the time!'  
He told us .....

### 4 Complete the reported advice and warnings.

- 1 'You should eat more vegetables, because they are very healthy!'  
The doctor advised us *to eat more vegetables because they are very healthy*
- 2 'You shouldn't sit in front of the computer for so long.'  
My mother warned me .....
- 3 'I think you should tell your parents the truth.'  
My friend advised me .....
- 4 'Don't spend all your pocket money at once!'  
My granny warned me .....
- 5 'You should do more exercise.'  
Our P.E. teacher advised us .....
- 6 'Why don't you invite all your class to your birthday party?'  
I advised my brother .....
- 7 'I think you shouldn't cut your hair short.'  
I advised my friend .....
- 8 'Don't buy this CD – it's hopeless!'  
A friend warned me .....

### 5 Report the things different people said to you yesterday. Use the verbs in brackets.

- 1 **Mum:** 'Could you buy some fruit on the way home from school?' (ask)  
*My mum asked me to buy some fruit on the way home from school.*
- 2 **Sister:** 'Don't touch my things!' (tell)  
.....
- 3 **Friend:** 'I think you should apologise to Dan.' (advise)  
.....
- 4 **Teacher:** 'Can you take some books to the library?' (want)  
.....
- 5 **Doctor:** 'Don't watch TV all the time!' (warn)  
.....
- 6 **Brother:** 'Wait for me, please!' (ask)  
.....
- 7 **Security guard:** 'Show me the contents of your bag, sir.' (order)  
.....
- 8 **Teacher:** 'Read the instructions carefully!' (advise)  
.....
- 9 **Friend:** 'You shouldn't go out alone in the evening!' (warn)  
.....
- 10 **Mother:** 'Could you tidy your room?' (ask)  
.....



## Unreal conditionals

→ Module 10, pages 94–95

### Use and Form

We use the unreal conditional

- to talk about impossible or unlikely future events and situations:

*If I **won** a million, I **wouldn't have to** work.*

*If Brazil **didn't qualify** for the World Cup, everybody **would be** surprised.*

- to talk about present situations that are impossible or unreal:

*If Europe **had** a warmer climate, we **would have** cheap exotic fruit.*

*If I **was** older, I **could vote** in the elections.*

We make Second Conditional sentences with *If* + past, *would/could* + infinitive without *to*.

### 1 Read the sentences. Write *P* for those that refer to the present and *F* for those that refer to the future.

- 1 If she didn't sing out of tune, her concerts would be more popular. .... *P*....
- 2 If we were rich, we'd live in a nice big house. ....
- 3 If you bought these earrings for your girlfriend, she would be delighted. ....
- 4 I'd have more interesting things to say if I read more. ....
- 5 I wouldn't have to go to school tomorrow if it was Sunday. ....
- 6 You wouldn't have those headaches if you slept eight hours a day. ....
- 7 If I became a pop star, I would invite you to my concerts. ....
- 8 If there were more students in our class, we would have more birthday parties. ....

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the unreal conditional.

- 1 If our footballers *played* (play) well, they *would win* (win) more games.
- 2 How ..... (you / communicate) with your friends if you ..... (not have) a mobile?
- 3 If my dad ..... (become) an MP, we ..... (move) to London.
- 4 You ..... (have) more time for me if you ..... (not watch) TV all the time.
- 5 If I ..... (have) a lot of money, I ..... (travel) around the world.
- 6 You ..... (get) fitter if you ..... (walk) to school every day.
- 7 If we all ..... (fail) this test, the teacher ..... (not be) happy.
- 8 She ..... (help) me a lot if she ..... (speak) Japanese.

### 3 Use the cues to write sentences in unreal conditionals.

- 1 Sue isn't late / I won't wait for her  
*If Sue was late, I would wait for her.* .....
- 2 He isn't tall / he can't play basketball  
.....
- 3 I don't have her address / we can't visit her  
.....
- 4 I can't drive / I can't give you a lift to the station.  
.....
- 5 The weather isn't better / we won't go sailing  
.....
- 6 Max doesn't like sport / we don't watch football games together  
.....
- 7 The history teacher is here / we will have a test  
.....
- 8 It is very cold in winter / we have to wear warm boots and coats.  
.....
- 9 there's a small chance we will win the match / we will celebrate  
.....
- 10 I don't have much time / I can't start learning Spanish  
.....
- 11 Martin is very nice / he has a lot of friends  
.....
- 12 perhaps I will fail the driving test / my parents will be angry  
.....



## A lot of/lots of, much/many, little/a little, few/a few

→ Module 10, page 101

### Use

A few and a little mean the same as 'a small number/amount'. Few and little have a negative meaning of 'not much/many, less than we want'.

We use few/a few in front of plural countable nouns:

I invited **a few friends** to my birthday party.

I've had very **few driving lessons**.

We use little/a little only in front of uncountable nouns:

There is **a little cake** left.

We have **little time**.

We use a lot of with plurals and uncountable nouns. It means 'a large number or amount of'. Lots of is a less formal alternative to a lot (of):

The baby has **a lot of toys**.

Do you drink **a lot of fruit juice**?

I had **lots of** presents on my birthday.

We wish you **lots of** luck in your exams.

We use singular verbs with uncountable nouns and plural verbs with plural nouns:

There **is a lot of information** on the Internet.

**A lot of films are** produced in Hollywood.

We use many in front of plural nouns and much in front of uncountable nouns. We usually use many and much in questions and negative sentences, and a lot of in statements:

I have **a lot of** good friends.

Did you meet **many** interesting people on holiday?

I didn't have **much** money to spend.

### 1 Choose the correct alternative.

- I don't need much/many money.
- We had *much/a lot of* free time in primary school.
- There were very *few/little* people at the concert.
- Put *lots of/much* fresh herbs in the soup.
- I prepared *a few/a little* sandwiches for you.
- He drinks *a lot of/much* mineral water.
- I haven't visited *many/a little* countries.
- Did you have *much/many* problems getting here?
- There are normally *few/little* tourists in our town.
- I need *much/a lot of* good advice on travelling in Africa.

### 2 Complete the sentences with little, a little, few or a few.

- We have to hurry up. There is very *little* time left.
- I have ..... friends in London. I can give you their phone numbers.
- Our town isn't very exciting. There's ..... to do in the evenings.
- I usually put ..... sugar in every dish I cook.
- We can't start the show, there are very ..... people in the audience.
- Will you wait for me? I need ..... minutes to get dressed.

### 3 Complete the dialogue with a lot of/lots of, much/many, little/a little or few/a few.

A: Are there **1.many** people in your salsa class?

B: No, there are only **2.....** girls and two boys.

Why don't you come too? You have **3.....** free time, you don't do **4.....** after-school activities.

A: Well, I don't have **5.....** money. Is it expensive?

B: Not really, you only need **6.....** money to pay for the membership card every year.

A: And I know very **7.....** about dancing.

B: Don't worry! It's **8.....** fun, you'll see.

### 4 Correct the incorrect sentences and tick (✓) the correct sentences.

- a lot of*  
1 I drink ~~much~~ coffee.
- 2 Do you have much lessons today?
- 3 There are a lot of nice people in my class.
- 4 I read many books but I don't read many newspapers.
- 5 I don't get much pocket money.
- 6 Are there many new teachers this year?



# Grammar Reference

## Answer Key

### Page 107 – Present Simple and Present Continuous

**Exercise 1** 2 Does Julia watch 3 eat 4 doesn't learn 5 Do you do 6 speaks 7 visit 8 don't go

**Exercise 2** Students' own answers

**Exercise 3** 2 The children are playing quietly. 3 Is the teacher waiting in the classroom? 4 We are not training enough. 5 Sam is not learning very much. 6 Are the students writing a test? 7 My sisters are taking driving lessons. 8 What are you reading?

**Exercise 4** 2 I'm not eating 3 are having 4 is learning 5 aren't going 6 I'm making 7 is sleeping 8 are doing

**Exercise 5** 2 is raining 3 live 4 are speaking 5 does he work 6 don't enjoy 7 are not reading 8 are having

**Exercise 6** 1 I'm learning, want 2 are you looking for, don't have, are moving 3 doesn't like, cycles 4 work, do you do? 5 are you painting, makes 6 is finishing, goes out 7 Are you using, I'm writing, want 8 doesn't eat, is 9 don't earn, work, is coaching 10 is she going, is wearing, looks

### Page 109 – Past Simple and Past Continuous

**Exercise 1** 2 wanted, went 3 gave, said, loved 4 washed up, did, was 5 came, watched 6 made, ate

**Exercise 2** 2 We didn't see anybody on the way here. 3 Did you feed the dog? 4 Joe fell into the lake last night. 5 I didn't watch the match last night. 6 Mum bought me a lot of CDs for my birthday.

**Exercise 3** 2 could swim when she was four. 3 didn't have to pay for the tickets. 4 couldn't open it. 5 had to walk to school. 6 didn't have to buy anything. 7 couldn't understand him. 8 could do what I wanted.

**Exercise 4** 2 could 3 couldn't 4 didn't have to 5 couldn't 6 had to 7 couldn't 8 could

**Exercise 5** 2 They weren't listening to the teacher 3 Someone was playing the trumpet in the street all night. 4 Where was Mike going at 10 o'clock last night? 5 We were reading newspapers on Sunday morning. 6 Who was talking on the phone half an hour ago?

**Exercise 6** 2 were you doing, weren't sleeping 3 hit, was thinking 4 fell, broke 5 knocked, wasn't paying 6 were you talking, tried, was 7 was taking, bumped 8 was the Queen wearing, didn't watch

**Exercise 7** 2 when 3 When/While 4 when 5 When/While 6 when/while

### Page 111 – Question tags and interested responses

**Exercise 1** 2 isn't he 3 do they 4 haven't you 5 was she 6 isn't it 7 didn't he 8 can't we 9 didn't they 10 isn't it 11 won't you 12 don't they 13 weren't they 14 is it

**Exercise 2** 2 Haven't you 3 Does he 4 Would you 5 Didn't you 6 Are they 7 Is it 8 Can he/she/it 9 Do they 10 Was it 11 Will you 12 Didn't he

### Page 112 – The passive

**Exercise 1** 2 are checked 3 is made 4 are given 5 is served 6 are discovered 7 are kept

**Exercise 2** 2 The letter was sent to all ministers. 3 Our protest was ignored completely.

4 A Picasso was sold for almost \$1 million. 5 I was told to drink a lot of water. 6 The car was repaired in two hours. 7 The president was asked a lot of interesting questions.

**Exercise 3** 2 was damaged during my birthday party 3 are stolen in our street 4 is celebrated on 1<sup>st</sup> June 5 was given a bunch of beautiful roses 6 are picked in June 7 was found in the forest 8 was played three times 9 was robbed on Tuesday morning 10 were seen getting into a white van

### Page 113 – Speculating

**Exercise 1** 2 like 3 have 4 know 5 be 6 feel

**Exercise 2** 2 can't 3 could 4 must 5 could 6 can't 7 can't 8 must 9 could

**Exercise 3** 1 could be, can't have 2 must be, can't be, must be 3 can't be, must like, could be 4 could be, can't be, could be 5 must be, can't be, could be 6 must be, can't be, could have

### Page 114 – Personal pronouns

**Exercise 1** 2 Our, theirs 3 my, yours 4 hers, yours 5 mine, your 6 Their, ours

**Exercise 2** 2 myself 3 himself 4 ourselves 5 yourself 6 themselves 7 herself 8 themselves

**Exercise 3** 2 yourselves 3 each other 4 each other 5 ourselves 6 each other 7 each other, each other 8 yourselves 9 ourselves 10 each other 11 each other 12 each other

### Page 115 – Present Perfect

**Exercise 1** 2 I haven't decided what to do yet. 3 The match has already finished. 4 He has never worked in a pub.

5 Have you taken your driving test yet? 6 Have you ever been to a fashion show?

**Exercise 2** 2 I've already been to London three times.

3 My parents have never shouted at me. 4 Has Peter invited his friends to his birthday party yet? 5 Have you ever wanted to change the school? 6 They haven't played squash before.

**Exercise 3** 2 My sister hasn't finished school yet. 3 Have your teachers ever shown you films? 4 My father has changed his job many times. 5 I have never had a date before. 6 Have you ever got a bike for Christmas? 7 We have never travelled on our own. 8 Have you seen the latest Johnny Depp film yet? 9 All my friends have already gone on holiday. 10 We haven't written the essay yet. 11 Have you eaten seafood before? 12 I haven't passed my driving test yet.

### Page 116 – Predictions

**Exercise 1** 2 won't 3 will 4 won't 5 will 6 won't 7 will 8 will

**Exercise 2** Students' own answers

**Exercise 3** (In all answers both *may* and *might* are possible.)

1 He may call the police. He might scream to frighten the robber. The robber may run away. The robber might get scared. 2 They may go to the cinema. They might have dinner at a restaurant. Mark may buy Beth some flowers. They might kiss. They may never see each other again after tonight. 3 She may put an announcement in the local paper. She might give it to the police.



She might keep the bracelet. She might leave the bracelet on the pavement. 4 She may travel around the world. She might buy a bigger house. She may invite her friends to a party. She might spend the money in a few months. She may put it in the bank.

**Exercise 4** 2 I don't know yet. I might learn Spanish or French. 3 I don't know yet. I might go on Saturday night or on Sunday. 4 I don't know yet. I might have a sandwich or a salad. 5 I don't know yet. I might dance with Diana or with Susan. 6 I don't know yet. I might go swimming or watch a film on TV.

**Exercise 5** 2 's going to faint 3 'm going to get flu 4 are going to be late 5 are going to be cold in this jacket 6 is going to be crowded 7 's going to be a beautiful day 8 plane is not going to land there

**Exercise 6** (Suggested answers) 2 The rain isn't going to stop soon. 3 The crew may drown. 4 The crew will send an S.O.S. signal. 5 A fishing boat might rescue them. 6 The sea may calm down suddenly. 7 The crew will put on life jackets. 8 Sharks may come to eat them.

### Page 118 – Present Perfect and Past Simple

#### Exercise 1

2 got 3 has broken 4 went 5 has won 6 Have you seen 7 didn't take part 8 bought 9 Did you eat 10 have lost 11 put 12 haven't done

#### Exercise 2 2a 3a 4b

**Exercise 3** 1 B: watched, showed 2 A: I have made B: had 3 A: Has he ever been B: has been, went 4 A: spent, was B: haven't visited 5 A: has arrived B: haven't finished, have you put 6 A: did you meet B: worked, has organised 7 A: have you lived B: moved in, didn't know, met

### Page 119 – Future conditional

#### Exercise 1

2 passes, will  
3 won't write, gives  
4 will be, sees  
5 will bite, touch  
6 are, won't take part

#### Exercise 2

2 go by bus 3 find a quiet café 4 inform the police 5 go to your embassy 6 find a medical centre

**Exercise 3** 2 Unless Robert goes to the interview, he won't get a part in the film. 3 If we are late for the concert, they won't let us in. 4 Maria won't travel unless she learns English and Spanish. 5 I'll phone you when I get home. 6 I'll lend you my bike if you promise to look after it.

### Page 120 – Defining relative clauses

**Exercise 1** 2 I haven't yet seen the guitar David bought last week. 3 We're going to meet in the club where my parent had their wedding party. 4 The judo class that we have on Tuesday has been moved to Friday. 5 Who are the people that came with Peter? 6 The book you're reading seems very interesting. 7 Do you know the man who runs this club? 8 I remember the time when we were in the same school.

**Exercise 2** 2 whose 3 (which) 4 where 5 that 6 who

**Exercise 3** 2 My friend lost the watch which he got at Christmas. 3 My mother works with a man whose daughter is in my class. 4 The computer that we bought was infected with a virus. 5 Let's go to a cinema where we can get something to eat. 6 The game that we watched was not very interesting.

### Page 121 – Nouns and adjectives

**Exercise 1** 2 are 3 is 4 are 5 is 6 is 7 are 8 are

**Exercise 2** 2 Let's go to a café in the town centre. 3 I hate

loud music and noisy people. 4 He found a good job at a local bank. 5 There is heavy traffic in London. 6 I have a friend who keeps a parrot in his flat. 7 Teenagers often spend hours in shopping malls. 8 I can't go out to a disco. I have to write an essay.

**Exercise 3** 2 clever history 3 beautiful round 4 hot vegetable 5 interesting art 6 old Irish wedding 7 large plastic 8 stylish black leather 9 lovely silver 10 expensive Austrian ski 11 traditional folk 12 fascinating science-fiction

### Page 122 – Reported orders, requests and advice

**Exercise 1** 2 I think you should stay at home. 3 We'd like you to go to the opera with us. 4 Don't leave the group during the tour of Rome! You can't leave the group during the tour of Rome.

5 Could you lend me your bike, please? 6 Leave of the building./ You must leave the building. 7 Don't go out with wet hair!

8 Could you try the shoes on?

**Exercise 2** 1 He, me, him, He, her, him 2 I, them, their, He, us, our, He, them, their 3 I, him, me, my, She, me, her, her, She, him, her, her 4 I, them, their, my, She, us, our, her, She, them, their, her

**Exercise 3** 2 not to look at it. 3 to help him. 4 not to drink fizzy drinks. 5 to bring their own sleeping bags. 6 not to stop in the tunnel. 7 not to talk to each other. 8 to study more 9 to show him the way to the post office. 10 not to listen to hip hop all the time.

**Exercise 4** 2 not to sit in front of the computer so long. 3 to tell my parents the truth. 4 not to spend all my pocket money at once. 5 to do more exercise. 6 to invite all his class to his birthday party. 7 not to cut her hair so short. 8 not to buy this CD.

**Exercise 5** 2 My sister told me not to touch her things. 3 A friend advised me to apologise to Dan. 4 The teacher wanted me to take some books to the library. 5 The doctor warned me not to watch the TV all the time. 6 My brother asked me to wait for him. 7 The security guard ordered me to show him the contents of my bag. 8 The teacher advised me to read the instructions carefully. 9 My friend warned me not to go out alone in the evening. 10 My mother asked me to tidy my room.

### Page 124 – Unreal conditionals

**Exercise 1** 2 F 3 F 4 P 5 F 6 P 7 F 8 P

**Exercise 2** 2 would you communicate, didn't have 3 became, would move 4 would have, didn't watch 5 had, would travel 6 would get, walked 7 failed, wouldn't be 8 would help, could speak

**Exercise 3** 2 If he was tall, he could play basketball. 3 If I had her address, we could visit her. 4 If I could drive, I could give you a lift to the railway station. 5 If the weather got better, we could go sailing. 6 I Max liked sport, we would watch football games together. 7 If the history teacher wasn't here, we wouldn't have a test. 8 If it wasn't so cold in winter, we wouldn't have to wear warm boots and coats. 9 If we win the match, we'll celebrate. 10 If I had more time, I could start learning Spanish. 11 If Martin wasn't so nice, he wouldn't have a lot of friends. 12 If I fail my driving test, my parents will be angry.

### Page 125 – a lot of/lots of, much/many, little/a little, few/a few

**Exercise 1** 2 a lot of 3 few 4 lots of 5 a few 6 a lot of 7 many 8 many 9 few 10 a lot

**Exercise 2** 2 a few 3 little 4 a little 5 few 6 a few

**Exercise 3** 2 a few 3 a little 4 many 5 much 6 a little 7 little 8 lots of

**Exercise 4** 2 much many...3 ✓ 4 many a lot of 5 ✓ 6 ✓



Pearson Education Limited  
Edinburgh Gate  
Harlow  
Essex CM20 2JE  
England  
and associated companies throughout the world  
www.longman.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2007

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the copyright holders.

The right of Amanda Maris to be identified as the author of this work have been asserted by her in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act, 1988.

First published 2007

Fifth impression 2009

Set in 11/12.5pt Ocean Sans

Printed in Malaysia (CTP-VVP)

ISBN: 978-0-582-84743-9 (Workbook)

ISBN: 978-0-582-85171-9 (CD-ROM)

ISBN: 978-1-4058-4473-4 (Workbook and CD-ROM pack)

Illustrated by Adrian Barclay, Alan Rowe, Debbie Ryder, Tony Forbes,  
Roger Wade-Walker and Mark Turner.

Design and page make-up by Richard Jervis Design

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce photographs:

**Alamy:** p48 (The Photolibrary Wales), p56(t) (Blaine Harrington III), p74 (Studio Liquid), p80(l) (Allstar Picture Library), p95(tr) (David K. Werk); **BananaStock Royalty Free Images:** p15(all), p45(all); **Corbis:** p11 (Royalty Free), p27 (Zefa) (Tom Stewart), p80(r) (Brooks Kraft), p84 (Bettman); **Getty Images:** p46 (National Geographic Creative); **Kobal Collection:** p54 (Weinstein Co.), p60 (Paramount Pictures) (Stephen Vaughan); **Lonely Planet Images:** p56(b) (Paul Greenway); **Punchstock Royalty Free Images:** p61 (Comstock).

Front Cover images: **Corbis:** (row boat) (Royalty Free); **Getty Images:** (dancing) (Taxi), (wind farm) (Photographers Choice), (guitar) (Taxi).

Back Cover images: **Getty Images:** (Easter Island) (Stone).

All other photographs were taken on commission © Pearson Education Ltd. By, Gareth Boden

Picture Research by Lisa Wren and Karen Jones

Every effort has been made to trace the copyright holders and we apologise in advance for an unintentional omissions. We would be pleased to insert the appropriate acknowledgement in any subsequent edition of this publication.

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright material:

The Nemours Foundation for an extract from *How Much Sleep do I Need?* published by KidsHeath.org, one of the largest resources online for medically reviewed health information written for parents, kids and teens. For more articles like this one, visit [www.KidsHeath.org](http://www.KidsHeath.org) or [www.TeensHeath.org](http://www.TeensHeath.org)  
© 1995-2006 The Nemours Foundation; W. Foulsham & Co. Ltd for extracts from *Simple Conjuring Tricks for Everyone* by Julia Thorley; Practical Pictures Ltd for an extract from *The Outrageously Big Activity, Play and Project Book* published by Lorenz books and Pearson Education Limited for extracts from *The Fugitive*, Penguin Reader edition.

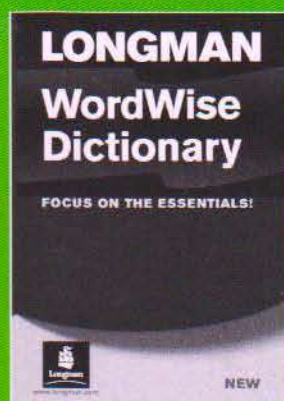
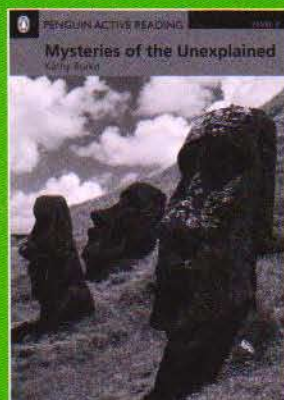
In some instances we have been unable to trace the owners of copyright material and we would appreciate any information that would enable us to do so.



# Challenges

## You CAN DO it!

For further reading  
we recommend:



**Challenges** is a new four level course for teenagers which gives them everything they need to be successful in learning English. Written by the authors of the global bestseller, *Opportunities*, **Challenges** provides:

- Coursebooks that can be completed in one year, giving students a clear sense of progress
- Informative and engaging topics that involve teenagers in their learning
- Unique features on word building, text building and sentence patterns
- Characters that promote positive values and use real spoken language
- Activities for building learner strategies for independent learning
- Magazine at the back of the Students' Book to support mixed ability classes
- Strong grammar and skills sections to give students confidence in using the language
- A full Word Bank that is easy to use
- A unique teacher's package that gives total support and maximum flexibility

**Challenges** gives total confidence in language learning and teaching. You can do it!



[www.longman.com](http://www.longman.com)

Components:

- Students' Book
- Class Cassettes and CDs
- Workbook with CD-ROM (Inc. Workbook audio)
- Teacher's Handbook
- Total Teacher's Pack with Test Master CD-ROM
- Test Book
- Test Cassette
- Video/DVD
- Video/DVD Workbook
- Companion Website [www.challenges-elt.com](http://www.challenges-elt.com)

ISBN 978-1-4058-4473-4



9 781405 844734 >